

200  
WALTER RIPMAN

**A SECOND ENGLISH BOOK**

EDITED FOR THE USE OF  
ESTHONIAN SCHOOLS BY  
**W. G. CLANMAN**



TALLINNAS, 1922  
G. PIHLAKA' se KIRJASTUS.

1008  
1009



A SECOND ENGLISH BOOK

FROM THE COLLECTION OF

Est A-16340

# A SECOND ENGLISH BOOK

BY

WALTER RIPMAN

---

EDITED FOR THE USE OF ESTONIAN SCHOOLS

BY

W. G. CLANMAN



TALLINNAS, 1922  
G. PIHLAKA KIRJASTUS.

A SECOND ENGLISH BOOK

WALTER RYMAN

EDITED FOR THE USE OF ESTONIAN SCHOOLS

WALTER RYMAN

5 29264698

**TARTU ÜLIKOOLI  
RAAMATU KOOGU**

---

J. & A. Paalmann'i trükk, Tallinnas.

## Preface to the first edition.

Nine years ago I sent forth my *First English Book*, wondering greatly how it would be received. It had been a labour of love, as well as a fascinating linguistic enterprise; but would it prove in practice as helpful a "guide book on the road to English" as I hoped? Clearly it could become known but slowly; would it ever be widely used?

During the first year after its publication only 350 copies were sold; but gradually the demand became greater, and last year the number rose to nearly 2500, apart from the sales in Sweden, where a separate edition was issued in 1909. It would be impossible to enumerate the countries where it is in use; it has been kindly welcomed in Germany, and has travelled to Finland, Hungary and Spain, nay, even to the Argentine, to India and Siam, to China and Japan. Soon teachers began to write, asking: "What shall we read with our pupils when we have finished the *First English Book*?" The answer was not easy. I believe in a systematic

acquisition of the vocabulary, and no other book was built on the foundation supplied by mine. So when other duties rendered it possible I set about writing this *Second English Book*.

Its main purpose is to give further practice in the words already learnt, and to provide new ones. To this end I have selected, and in part rewritten, a number of stories. The earlier ones are of a simple nature, without (I hope) being dull. Then come such favourite tales as Dick Whittington and Rip Van Winkle, followed by stories from real life. Words not contained in the *First English Book* are printed in heavy type, when they first occur, and are explained by means of familiar words at the foot of the page. An alphabetical list of the new words, with phonetic transcription and references, is given at the end of the book. The words occurring in the *First* and *Second English Books* have also been arranged in groups according to the meaning; this part of the book will be found helpful for purposes of revision. The exercises on these stories (i-xxii) are divided into four sections:—

- A. Questions on the subject-matter.
- B. Questions on the vocabulary.
- C. Grammar questions.
- D. Suggestions for free composition.

These exercises have been made rather full ; the teacher will require the whole of them or only part to be done, at his discretion, and will decide whether they shall be done orally or in writing, or both.

The section for "Easy Reading" contains further stories, in which the number of new words is small ; and some Poems have also been added.

The practice of the class-room can alone show whether I am right in believing that my *Second English Book* will help boys and girls a little farther along the road. I have tried to render it interesting, because that is the surest way of making children like their work. I want them to look upon the study of English as something delightful.

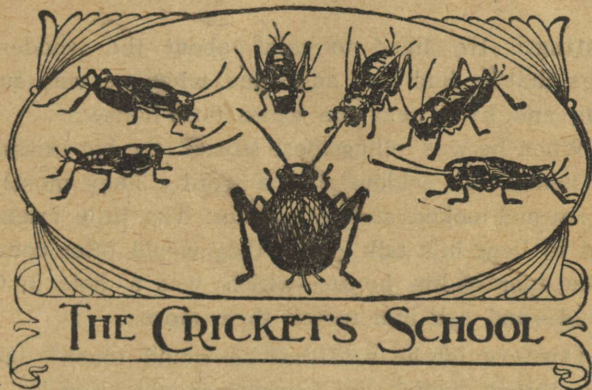
In the learning of every language there is a certain amount of drudgery, and if this is obtruded on the learner in the early stages there is some danger of his acquiring a lasting distaste for the foreign language. Some books for beginners bristle with difficulties at the very outset ; they contain too extensive a vocabulary, too much grammar, too much in the subject-matter that is unfamiliar. Our first object must be to enable the young learner to acquire an easy mastery of the common words and the ordinary constructions, by methods which will awaken his sympathies.

This I have attempted to do. It sounds easy, but it is really rather difficult. I hope sincerely that those who use this book will judge it favourably. For any suggestions that would improve it I shall be very grateful.

*WALTER RIPMAN.*

London, May 1913.

---



## I. The Cricket's School.

There was once a fat old cricket,<sup>1</sup> who thought a good deal of himself.<sup>2</sup> He had such a big, shining body, and a way of chirping<sup>1</sup> so loudly,<sup>3</sup> that no one could ever forget<sup>4</sup> where he lived.

He was a very good sort of cricket, and was always ready<sup>5</sup> to say pleasant things to everybody. Yet, sad to relate,<sup>6</sup> he had a very bad habit of

---

<sup>1</sup> A little insect, often heard in the cornfields in summer-time. We say: the crickets are **chirping**, when they make their noise. <sup>2</sup> Or: had a very great **opinion** of himself. What is your opinion of him? (What do you think of him?) <sup>3</sup> Adverb to: loud; *s.* loudness; *opp.* softly, quietly. <sup>4</sup> *a.* **forgetful**. He never remembers where he has put his books; he is a very forgetful boy. **Forgetfulness** is a very bad habit. <sup>5</sup> Or: willing. <sup>6</sup> Or: tell. Sad to relate: It makes one sad to talk about it.

**boasting.**<sup>7</sup> He liked to talk<sup>8</sup> about the wonderful things that he had seen and done, when he was quite young and lived near the white farm-house.

When he was telling these stories, the big crickets, who heard him, seldom<sup>9</sup> said a word. They **mostly**<sup>10</sup> just sat and looked at one another. The little crickets loved to hear him talk,<sup>11</sup> and they would often come<sup>12</sup> to the door of his house—which was a hole in the ground—and ask him to tell them more.

One evening he said that he would **teach**<sup>13</sup> them a few things, which all crickets should know.<sup>14</sup> He then told them to stand in a **row**,<sup>15</sup> and this is what he said:

“With what part of your bodies do you run and leap?”<sup>16</sup>

“With our legs,” they cried.

“Do you do anything else with your legs?” he asked.

“We clean ourselves with them,” said one.

<sup>7</sup> When a man often tells us how wonderfully strong or wise he is, we call him **boastful**. It is better to be **modest** than to boast. <sup>8</sup> He was fond of talking. <sup>9</sup> Or: **rarely**, hardly ever; *opp.* often. <sup>10</sup> At most times, usually, **generally**. <sup>11</sup> Or: listened to him with the greatest pleasure, found his words most interesting. <sup>12</sup> Would come: used to come. <sup>13</sup> You go to school to learn, and your teacher teaches you. He taught me, he has taught me. <sup>14</sup> Or: ought to know. <sup>15</sup> In a row: one next to the other. The houses of a street are in a row. Trees are often planted in rows. <sup>16</sup> Crickets can leap (or jump) very high.

"We use them and our mouths to make houses in the ground," said another.

"Oh yes, and we hear with our two front legs," cried one bright<sup>17</sup> little fellow.

"That is right," replied the fat old cricket. "Most creatures<sup>18</sup> hear with things called ears, that grow on the sides of their heads, but I think it<sup>19</sup> much nicer to hear with one's legs, as we do."

"Why, how strange it must be not to hear with one's legs!" cried all the little crickets together.

"There are a great many queer<sup>20</sup> things to be seen in the great world," said their teacher.<sup>13</sup> "I have seen some big, big creatures with only two legs and no wings whatever."<sup>21</sup>

"How dreadful!"<sup>22</sup> cried the little crickets. "We do not see how they could move about at all."

"It must be very hard to do so," said the big cricket. "I was very sorry<sup>22</sup> for them." Then he spread<sup>23</sup> out his own wings and stretched his six legs to show how well he was fitted<sup>24</sup> to walk or fly.

"But how can they sing if they have no wings?" asked the bright little cricket.

---

<sup>17</sup> Or: clever, intelligent; *opp.* stupid, silly; *s.* brightness. <sup>18</sup> Or: animals, living beings. <sup>19</sup> Or: it seems to me, in my opinion it is. <sup>20</sup> Or: strange, unusual, odd. <sup>21</sup> Or: no wings at all, no wings of any kind. <sup>22</sup> Or: sad. It fills them with sorrow to think of these poor creatures, they are sorry for them. <sup>23</sup> A bird or insect spreads its wings when it flies, and folds them together when it is not flying. <sup>24</sup> He had all that was wanted for walking or flying.

"They sing through their mouths, in much the same way as the birds,"<sup>25</sup> he said. "I am sure it must be much easier to sing by **rubbing**<sup>26</sup> one's wings together, as we do."

"I could tell you many queer things about these **two-legged**<sup>27</sup> creatures," he **continued**,<sup>28</sup> "for I have seen the houses in which they live. Then there are other large, four-footed creatures that are terrible to **behold**,<sup>29</sup> but, my children, I was never afraid of any of them. I am one of the **truly**<sup>30</sup> **brave**<sup>31</sup> people, who are never frightened, no matter how terrible the sight.<sup>32</sup> I hope, children, that you will always be brave, like me. If anything should **scare** you,<sup>33</sup> do not jump or run away. Stay just where you are, and—"

But the little crickets never heard the rest of what their teacher had to say, for at that moment<sup>34</sup> Brown Bess<sup>35</sup>, the cow, came through the broken fence towards the spot where the crickets were gathered together.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>25</sup> Or: in a way that is very much like that of the birds.  
<sup>26</sup> When it is cold, we rub our hands together to make them warm. Past: rubbed. <sup>27</sup> Having two legs. <sup>28</sup> Or: went on. He said some more. <sup>29</sup> Or: see, look at. Past: I beheld. <sup>30</sup> *a.* true; really.  
<sup>31</sup> A boy who is not easily frightened is brave. The man who fights for his country is brave. *s.* **bravery**. <sup>32</sup> Even if what they see is very terrible. <sup>33</sup> Or: seem terrible to you. <sup>34</sup> Or: just then. <sup>35</sup> Bess, short for Elizabeth. <sup>36</sup> Where they had come together, where they were all together.

The teacher gave one "chirp," and **hurried**<sup>37</sup> down his hole as fast as he could. The little crickets **tumbled**<sup>38</sup> over one another in their hurry<sup>37</sup> to get away. The fat old cricket, who had been out in the great world, never again talked to them about being brave.

---

<sup>37</sup> When we have little time to do a thing, we are in a **hurry**. When we are late in leaving home, we hurry to school.

<sup>38</sup> Or: fell.

## II. How Mrs White Hen helped Rose.

A beautiful rose tree grew<sup>1</sup> in the garden. Every morning she smiled up at the golden sun.<sup>2</sup> But one morning when the sun rose,<sup>3</sup> he was **surprised**<sup>4</sup> to see that his friend, the rose, **drooped**<sup>5</sup> sadly. He sent one of his warm<sup>6</sup> rays down to the earth to find out what the **matter** was.<sup>7</sup>

"Dear Rose," said the bright sunbeam, "why do you droop and look so sad?"

"Ah, me!" **sighed**<sup>8</sup> the rose, "I am so unhappy! An ugly<sup>9</sup> worm is eating my leaves, and he will not **crawl**<sup>10</sup> away."

---

<sup>1</sup> To grow; *s.* growth <sup>2</sup> *a.* sunny; a sunny room, a sunny smile. <sup>3</sup> *s.* sunrise; birds wake at sunrise; *opp.* sunset When did the sun rise to-day? when will it set? <sup>4</sup> Or it seemed strange to him. <sup>5</sup> When flowers are without water, they droop. <sup>6</sup> *s.* warmth; *cp.* length (*a.* long), growth (*v.* grow). <sup>7</sup> What was wrong, why the rose was drooping. <sup>8</sup> When we are sad, we sometimes sigh. <sup>9</sup> *s.* ugliness; *opp.* beautiful. <sup>10</sup> A worm has no legs and cannot walk; it crawls from place to place.

The sun felt very sorry for the rose. "I will not shine," he said, "until Rose is happy." So he hid behind a dark<sup>11</sup> cloud.

The wind came hurrying along. "Father Sun," he cried, "why are you not shining to-day?"

"Ah, me!" answered the sun, "dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. I will shine no more until Rose is happy."

"I, too, am so sorry," **whispered**<sup>12</sup> the wind. "I will blow no more until Rose is happy." So saying,<sup>13</sup> he dropped<sup>14</sup> to the earth and was still.

A bird was surprised when the wind stopped.

"Mr Wind," he called, "why have you stopped blowing?"

"Ah, me!" sighed the wind. "Dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. So Sun will shine no more, and I will blow no more until Rose is happy."

"I, also, love Rose," sang the bird; "and I will sing no more until Rose is happy." He flew<sup>15</sup> away silently to his nest in the oak tree.

"It is not night," said the old tree; "why are you not flying and singing, little bird?"

---

<sup>11</sup> *s.* darkness; *cp.* brightness, forgetfulness, happiness, ugliness. <sup>12</sup> Said softly. He spoke in a **whisper**, because he felt sorry. <sup>13</sup> Or: with these words, when he had said this. <sup>14</sup> We often say: the wind has dropped, when it has stopped blowing. <sup>15</sup> To fly; *s.* flight. The bird has flown away.

"Ah, me!" chirped<sup>16</sup> the bird. "Dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. So Sun will shine no more, Wind will blow no more, and I will sing no more until Rose is happy."

"That is all very sad," whispered the tree. "I shall drop no more **acorns**<sup>17</sup> until Rose is happy."

Soon the squirrel came to gather nuts.<sup>18</sup> But he could find very few.

"Dear Tree," he **chattered**,<sup>19</sup> "please drop some acorns."

"No," answered the tree, "I cannot, now."

"Why not?" asked the squirrel.

"Ah, me!" **rustled**<sup>20</sup> the tree. "Dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. So Sun will shine no more, Wind will blow no more, Bird will sing no more, and I will drop no more acorns until Rose is happy again."

"And I will work no more," chirped the squirrel. "I will run away to my nest in the old **hollow**<sup>21</sup> tree."

On the way to his home the squirrel met Mrs. Brown Duck.

---

<sup>16</sup> Birds sometimes chirp or **twitter**. <sup>17</sup> The acorn is the fruit of the oak. <sup>18</sup> The **hazelnut** grows on bushes, the **walnut** on trees. A nut has a hard shell; we break the shell and eat the **kernel**. <sup>19</sup> When a child talks a good deal, and quickly, we say that he **chatters**. <sup>20</sup> When the leaves of a tree move, we hear their **rustling**. <sup>21</sup> Old trees are sometimes hollow, so that animals can live inside them.

"Good morning, Mr Squirrel," **quacked**<sup>22</sup> the duck. "Why are you not working this morning?"

"Ah, me!" replied the squirrel. "Dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. So Sun will shine no more, Wind will blow no more, Bird will sing no more, Oak Tree will drop no more acorns, and I will work no more till Rose is happy."

"Then I will swim no more," said Mr Brown Duck. And she **waddled**<sup>23</sup> off to the **farmyard**.<sup>24</sup> There she met Mrs White Hen.

"Why do you look so sad, Mrs Duck?" said the hen.

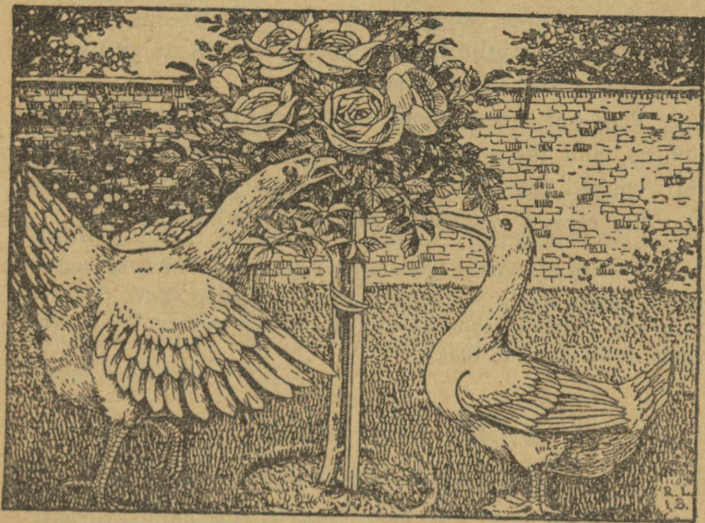
"Ah, me!" quacked the duck. Dear Rose is so unhappy! An ugly worm is eating her leaves, and he will not crawl away. So Sun will shine no more, Wind will blow no more, Bird will sing no more, Oak Tree will drop no more acorns, Squirrel will work no more, and I will swim no more, until Rose is happy again.

"Indeed! Indeed!" **cackled**<sup>25</sup> Mrs White Hen. **Pray**<sup>26</sup> tell me how stopping your work will help Rose. If you wish Rose to be happy, you must do something for her. Come with me."

Away hurried the hen and the duck until they came to the rose. The old hen asked no questions. She did not even take time to say "Good morning."

<sup>22</sup> A duck cannot sing, it has no beautiful voice; it quacks. <sup>23</sup> A boy walks or runs, a worm crawls, and a duck waddles. <sup>24</sup> Geese, ducks, and hens are in the farmyard. <sup>25</sup> The duck quacks and the hen cackles or clucks. <sup>26</sup> Or: please.

But she **searched**<sup>27</sup> through the leaves of the rosebush with her bright little eyes. Suddenly she **darted**<sup>28</sup> forward. "**Snap!**"<sup>29</sup> went her bill,<sup>29</sup> and the worm was **swallowed**.<sup>30</sup>



"There, Mrs Duck," clucked<sup>25</sup> the hen, "see how I have helped Rose and at the same time got a nice breakfast for myself."

At once the rose looked up towards the sun and smiled. Then the sun began to shine.

---

<sup>27</sup> She looked for something. She wanted to find out where the worm was. <sup>28</sup> Moved very quickly. <sup>29</sup> That is the noise her bill made when it closed. Birds do not have a mouth, but a bill. <sup>30</sup> After biting our food, we swallow it.

"If I had only thought," said the sun, "I might have burned that worm with my hot rays."

"And I might have blown him away," whistled the wind **springing up**<sup>31</sup> suddenly.<sup>32</sup>

"If I had only thought," sang the bird, "I might have had a nice fat worm for breakfast."

"And so might I," quacked the duck as she waddled away towards the pond.

The oak tree shook down a great **shower**<sup>33</sup> of acorns, and the squirrel hastened to gather them. They, too, wished they had thought of some way to help Rose. But the clever old white hen said nothing at all.

---

<sup>31</sup> When the wind begins to blow, we say that it is springing up. It sprang up; it has sprung up. <sup>32</sup> Or: all at once. <sup>33</sup> When rain falls suddenly and heavily, we call it a shower. The acorns came down just like that.

### III. Two Fables.

#### THE LION AND THE GNAT.

A **lion**<sup>1</sup> and a **gnat**<sup>2</sup> lived in the same **forest**.<sup>3</sup> The lion was king over all the animals.

"Why should the lion be our king?" cried the gnat.

"Because he is the strongest"<sup>4</sup> answered the other animals.

---

<sup>1</sup> A very strong, wild animal, often called the king of animals. There are lions in **Africa** and **Asia**, but not in **Europe**.

<sup>2</sup> A very small insect that **stings**. Bees also can sting. We do not like an insect to sting us. <sup>3</sup> A great wood. <sup>4</sup> s. **strength**; cp. **warmth**, **growth**, **length**.

"I don't know about that,"<sup>5</sup> said the gnat. "If I **kill** him<sup>6</sup> and show that I am stronger, will you make me king?"

All the animals laughed a great deal at the **thought**<sup>7</sup> of the little gnat killing the great lion. But just for fun<sup>8</sup> they promised to make him king if he killed the lion.

The next day the gnat found the lion fast asleep under a tree.

"Now is my **chance**,"<sup>10</sup> he thought. So he crept<sup>11</sup> up to the lion and stung<sup>12</sup> him on the ear.

"See, he **bleeds!**"<sup>13</sup> he cried. "I have killed the mighty lion! Look, he is dead! He moves no more! Now I shall be king!"

Just then the lion rose and stretched himself and walked away. He never knew that the gnat had stung him.

#### THE CROW AND THE DOVE.

Once upon a time a **crow**<sup>14</sup> and a **dove**<sup>14</sup> visited a **peacock**.<sup>14</sup> On the way home the crow said —

<sup>5</sup> Or: I am not sure about that. <sup>6</sup> Or: take his life. <sup>7</sup> *v.* to think; *a.* **thoughtful**. <sup>8</sup> *opp.* seriously, in earnest. Fun, *a.* funny; cp. sun: sunny. <sup>9</sup> When we are fast asleep it is not easy to wake us. <sup>10</sup> I can best do it now, while he is asleep. <sup>11</sup> Past of: I creep. <sup>12</sup> Past of: I sting; see note 2. <sup>13</sup> When I cut my finger, it bleeds; blood comes from it. My finger bled; it has bled. <sup>14</sup> The crow is a big black bird; the dove is a smaller bird; the peacock is a bird with a beautiful big tail.

"What do you think of Mr. Peacock? Did you ever meet such a rude person?<sup>15</sup> What an **unpleasant**<sup>16</sup> voice he has! And did you notice his feet? How ugly they are! Now tell me, did you ever know any creature so silly and **proud**?<sup>17</sup>"

"To tell the truth,"<sup>18</sup> said the dove, "I did not notice his voice or his feet or his pride.<sup>17</sup> I was busy every minute thinking how beautiful his feathers are, how **royally**<sup>19</sup> he carries his head, and how handsome his tail is."

---

<sup>15</sup> Person is really a word for a human being; *a.* personal. *opp.* pleasant; *cp.* comfortable: uncomfortable; happy: unhappy. <sup>17</sup> One who thinks much of himself, who has a very good opinion of himself, is proud. The old cricket was proud (see I. 2); *s.* **pride**. <sup>18</sup> Or: I must say. <sup>19</sup> Or: like a king.



#### IV. THE BUTTERFLY THAT WENT CALLING

Early one bright morning, a butterfly flew away to pay a visit to the flowers. First he stopped to see the daisies by the wayside. They were all dancing in the wind, and their bright faces looked as cheerful<sup>1</sup> as any one could wish.<sup>2</sup>

They were all glad to see the butterfly, and they asked him to spend the day with them.<sup>3</sup> In reply he said:<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: glad, merry; s. cheerfulness. <sup>2</sup> Or: any person could desire. <sup>3</sup> Or: to stay with them all day. <sup>4</sup> Or: he answered.



"You are very kind,<sup>5</sup> but I really cannot stay with you. Pray<sup>6</sup> **excuse** me<sup>7</sup> for saying so, but I wonder that you will grow here.<sup>8</sup> The place is very dusty and dry, and there is no shade. I am sure I could find<sup>9</sup> you a much nicer<sup>10</sup> place."

The daisies heard all that the butterfly had to say. Then they smiled and **nodded**<sup>11</sup> to each other, while one of them said:

"This is the **kind** of place we were made for, that is enough for us."<sup>12</sup>

The butterfly shook his head as if in **doubt**<sup>13</sup> and **bade**<sup>14</sup> the daisies "good-morning." Then he flew away to call on the **buttercups**,<sup>15</sup> which grew by the side of the water. These flowers are a very grand family, who hold their heads as high as they can.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Or: I am much obliged to you; s. **kindness**. He showed me great kindness: he was very kind to me. Cp. II. 26. <sup>7</sup> Do not be angry with me. <sup>8</sup> Or: I am surprised (it surprises me, it seems strange to me) that you should like to grow here. <sup>9</sup> Or: I could certainly find. <sup>10</sup> Or: more pleasant. <sup>11</sup> We nod by moving the head up and down. Sometimes we nod instead of saying: Yes. <sup>12</sup> Or this is the sort of place for which we are fitted, and we do not want anything better, we are quite contented. <sup>13</sup> We often shake our head, instead of saying: No, or when we are not sure (or, in doubt). There is no doubt that he will come: I am sure he will come. I **doubt** his coming: I do not think he will come. <sup>14</sup> Past of: I bid (*pp.* bidden). He bade us "good-bye". He said "good-bye" to us. <sup>15</sup> The buttercup is a yellow flower, very common in English meadows. <sup>16</sup> Or: who carry their heads proudly.

They seemed much pleased when Mr Butterfly told them how beautiful the river looked in the **sunlight**.<sup>17</sup>

"It is a delightful place," said they.

"It is very pretty," said Mr Butterfly, "but I do not think that it can be healthy.<sup>18</sup> I really do not understand why you flowers choose such strange homes.<sup>19</sup> Now there are the daises, where I have just called. They live in a dusty, dry place, where there is no shade at all."

"But daises always do choose such places," said the buttercups.

"And your family," said Mr Butterfly, "have lived so long in wet places that it is a wonder<sup>20</sup> you are alive. Your colour is good,<sup>21</sup> but to stand with one's roots<sup>22</sup> in water all the time is dreadful."

"Buttercups and butterflies live differently," said the flowers. "Good morning."

Mr Butterfly left the river and flew over to the woods. He was so angry that his **feelers**<sup>23</sup> **quivered**.<sup>24</sup> He knew that the **violets**<sup>25</sup> were a very **agreeable**<sup>26</sup> family, who never put on airs,<sup>27</sup> so he went at once to them.

He just said "Good morning" to them, and then he began to tell his story.

<sup>17</sup> The light of the sun; cp. **moonlight**. <sup>18</sup> Or: good for your health. <sup>19</sup> Or: such odd (queer) places to live in. <sup>20</sup> Or: it is surprising. <sup>21</sup> Or: you have a nice colour, I like your colour. <sup>22</sup> The **root** of a **plant** is in the earth. We **plant** it by putting its root in the earth. <sup>23</sup> The butterfly has feelers on its head, with which it can feel what is before it. <sup>24</sup> Or: trembled. <sup>25</sup> A little blue flower with a very sweet smell. <sup>26</sup> Or: pleasant. <sup>27</sup> Or: never thought too much of themselves, were modest.

"To think," he said, "what queer **ideas**<sup>28</sup> some flowers have! Now, you have a pleasant home here at the edge<sup>29</sup> of the woods. I have been telling the daisies and the buttercups that they should grow in such a place, but they would not listen to me."

"My dear friend," replied the violet, "they could never live if they moved up into our **neighbourhood**.<sup>30</sup> Every flower has its own place in the world, and is happiest in that place."

The violet was silent<sup>31</sup> for a moment, but the butterfly did not speak. So she continued:

"You were very kind to want to help the flowers, but suppose they had told you what to do, would you have done it? Suppose the buttercups had told you that flying around<sup>32</sup> was not good for you health, and that to be truly well you ought to grow planted<sup>22</sup> with your legs in **mud**<sup>33</sup> and water."

"Oh!" said the butterfly. "Oh! I never thought of that! Perhaps butterflies do not know everything."

"No" said the violet, "they don't know everything. But those who are ready<sup>34</sup> to learn, can always find some one to tell them. Won't you take a little honey?"

And Mr Butterfly **sipped**<sup>35</sup> the honey and was happy.

<sup>28</sup> Or: thoughts. <sup>29</sup> Not in the middle. <sup>30</sup> Or: if they came near us, became our neighbours. <sup>31</sup> Or: did not speak, stopped speaking. <sup>32</sup> Or: about. <sup>33</sup> Or: earth. Water becomes **muddy** when we throw earth into it. Mud: muddy; cp. fun: funny. <sup>34</sup> Or: willing. <sup>35</sup> We sip water if we drink it slowly, a little at a time. Sip: sipped; cp. drop: dropped; hop: hopped; slip: slipped; stop: stopped.

## V. The Wisdom of a Poor Man.

One day at noon<sup>1</sup> a poor man tied<sup>2</sup> his horse to a tree, and sat down to eat his midday<sup>1</sup> meal.

A rich man came along and started<sup>3</sup> to tie his horse to the same tree.

"Do not fasten your horse to that tree," cried the poor man. "My horse is very **savage**.<sup>4</sup> He will kill yours. Fasten him to another tree."

The rich man answered proudly, "I shall tie my horse where I wish."<sup>5</sup>

So he fastened his horse to the same tree to which the poor man's horse was tied, and sat down to eat his dinner.

"Suddenly<sup>6</sup> the men heard a great noise, and looked up. Their horses were fighting. The two men **rushed up**<sup>7</sup> to stop them, but it was too late. The rich man's horse was dead.

"See what your horse has done!" he cried to the poor man in great anger. "But you shall pay<sup>8</sup> for it! You shall pay for it!"

<sup>1</sup> At twelve o'clock, in the middle of the day, at **midday**: *opp.* midnight. <sup>2</sup> Or: fastened, made fast, by means of a **rope** (which is like a string, but much thicker and stronger). <sup>3</sup> Or: began. <sup>4</sup> It is not a quiet horse, it bites; *opp.* **gentle**. <sup>5</sup> Or: where I like, where it pleases me. <sup>6</sup> Or: all at once. <sup>7</sup> Or: hurried towards them, ran up to them. <sup>8</sup> Or: suffer.

So saying, he **dragged**<sup>9</sup> the poor man before the **judge**.<sup>10</sup>

"O wise<sup>11</sup> judge!" he cried. "This man's savage horse has killed my horse—my beautiful, kind, gentle,<sup>4</sup> horse! Make him pay for it or send him to prison,<sup>12</sup> I beg of you."

The judge turned to the poor man. "Did your horse kill this man's horse?" he asked.

But the poor man said not one word.<sup>13</sup>

"Can't you talk?" asked the judge.

The poor man answered never a word.

The judge asked the poor man many questions, but he still kept his lips closed<sup>14</sup> and answered nothing.

At last the judge said to the rich man: "What can I do? This poor man is dumb. He cannot speak a word."

"Oh, sir," said the rich man, "he can talk as you or I. He spoke to me on the road."

"Are you sure?" asked the judge. "What did he say?"

"Indeed, I am sure. He said quite plainly<sup>15</sup>: "Do not fasten your horse to that tree. My horse

<sup>9</sup> *opp.* to take gently. Drag: dragged, cp. beg: begged, leg: two-legged. <sup>10</sup> When men quarrel, for instance about a piece of land, they go before a judge, who says which of them is in the right. <sup>11</sup> *opp.* foolish, silly, stupid. <sup>12</sup> When a man has done a great wrong, he is sent to prison. Then he is a prisoner. <sup>13</sup> Or: not a **single** word, never a word. He did not speak at all. <sup>14</sup> When we talk, we open our lips; when we keep them closed, we are silent. <sup>15</sup> Or: clearly. It was not difficult to hear what he said.

is very savage. He will kill yours. Fasten him to another tree."

"Ah," said the judge, "now I see. If he **warned**<sup>16</sup> you, he **need** not pay for your horse.<sup>17</sup> You only are to **blame**.<sup>18</sup> You should have **heeded**<sup>19</sup> his warning<sup>16</sup>."

Then the judge turned to the poor man. "Why did you not answer my questions?" he asked.

"Can you not see,<sup>20</sup> O wise judge?" answered the poor man. "If I had told you that I warned him not to tie his horse near mine, he would have **denied**<sup>21</sup> it. Then you would not know which of us was telling the truth. I knew, O wise one, that if I let him tell the story alone, you would soon learn the truth."

The poor man's words pleased the judge, and he sent the rich man away without a penny. But he **praised**<sup>18</sup> the poor man for his wisdom.

---

<sup>16</sup> We warn a man when we tell him to take care, to be careful. The poor man gave a **warning** to the rich man. <sup>17</sup> Or: why should he pay for your horse? You can go there if you like, but you need not go there. You need not write to your friend, as you will see him this afternoon. <sup>18</sup> You lost your horse because you were foolish. The teacher blames a boy if he comes late to school; he **praises** him if he does his work well. <sup>19</sup> Or: listened to. I did not heed what he said: it was as if he had not spoken to me at all. He did not heed the **warning**: the warning fell on deaf ears. <sup>20</sup> Or: do you not understand? <sup>21</sup> He would have said: it is not true.

## VI. The Wolf and the Lamb.

One day a little lamb was lost<sup>1</sup> in a dark wood. He ran on and on, but could not find his way out.<sup>2</sup>

At last he became frightened and began to bleat.<sup>3</sup> A hungry wolf<sup>4</sup> heard him.

How glad was the wolf to find such a good dinner!

"Oh, Mr Wolf!" cried the little lamb, "please show me the way home."<sup>5</sup>

"Show you the way home!" growled<sup>6</sup> the wolf. "I am hungry, and I'm going to eat you."

"Oh, please, please, Mr Wolf," begged the frightened lamb, "please let me go!" "No, no, I'll eat you," growled the wolf.

And he sprang<sup>7</sup> at the lamb, now almost dead with frigh<sup>8</sup>.

Just then the little lamb had a good idea.<sup>9</sup>

"Oh, Mr Wolf," said he, "I have heard that you have a very fine voice. I love to dance. Will you not sing for me, so that I may have one more dance<sup>10</sup> before I die?<sup>11</sup> It is not much to ask." This pleased the wolf, for he was very proud of his voice.

<sup>1</sup> It had lost its way. <sup>2</sup> Out of the wood. <sup>3</sup> Sheep bleat; dogs bark. <sup>4</sup> A savage animal, rather like a big dog. It kills and eats smaller animals, just as the eagle (a great savage bird) lives on smaller birds. <sup>5</sup> Or: tell me which is my way home, how I can get home. <sup>6</sup> He spoke savagely; *opp.* to speak gently, softly, kindly. <sup>7</sup> Or; jumped. <sup>8</sup> Or: nearly frightened to death. <sup>9</sup> See IV. 28. <sup>10</sup> *v.* to dance. <sup>11</sup> *a.* dead; *s.* death.

“Well,” he growled, “a song is good before eating. I often sing before my dinner. To-day I was too hungry to think of it. But I will sing just one song. Then I will eat you. Dance for the last time, now!”

So the wolf sang a song, and the lamb danced his best.<sup>12</sup>



When the wolf stopped, the lamb cried, “That was good. But you did not sing loud enough or fast enough for me. Is that the best you can do?”<sup>13</sup>

---

<sup>12</sup> Or: as well as he could. <sup>13</sup> Or: can you not sing better than that?

"No," said the wolf, "I can sing louder and faster than any one in the woods. Listen!" So the wolf sang louder and faster.

And the lamb danced even better than before.

But the wolf made so much noise that the dogs heard it.

They came running into the wood to see what the matter was.<sup>14</sup>

The wolf had to run for his life.<sup>15</sup>

But the wise little lamb ran safely<sup>16</sup> home to his mother.

"I have to go without<sup>17</sup> my dinner," growled the wolf. "I alone am to blame.<sup>18</sup> I should kill and eat lambs, not sing for them."

<sup>14</sup> See II, 7. <sup>15</sup> The dogs would have taken his life (would have killed him), if he had not run away. <sup>16</sup> Without harm: at home the lamb was in safety. The dogs had saved its life. <sup>17</sup> Or: do without. The wolf lost his dinner, because the dogs had come in time to save the lamb. <sup>18</sup> See V, 18.

## VII. The Fox, the Bear, and the Farmer (1).

A poor farmer went to a field one morning to plough<sup>1</sup> with his two cows; he was too poor to keep oxen. As he drove<sup>1</sup> near the edge of the forest,<sup>2</sup> he

<sup>1</sup> The farmer ploughs his fields in the autumn. The plough is often drawn by horses; the farmer drives the plough. <sup>2</sup> See IV, 29.

suddenly heard a great noise of rustling and **crackling**<sup>3</sup> and growling. Leaving his plough, he crept softly to the wood and peeped **cautiously**<sup>4</sup> through the branches. There he saw a **huge**<sup>5</sup> bear dancing on his hind legs. That struck the farmer as<sup>6</sup> the funniest sight<sup>7</sup> he had



ever seen. He laughed and laughed until it seemed he could never stop laughing.<sup>8</sup> This made the bear very angry.

<sup>3</sup> When we put our foot on a dry branch, it crackles as it breaks. If we burn dry wood it also makes a crackling noise. <sup>4</sup> Or: with caution, carefully. <sup>5</sup> Very big. A huge mountain, a huge building. <sup>6</sup> Or: seemed, appeared to the farmer. <sup>7</sup> sight (that) he . . . <sup>8</sup> Or: he must go on laughing for ever.

"What do you mean by laughing so at me?" he growled savagely.

The poor farmer was now as much frightened as he had been **amused**<sup>9</sup> a moment before. He couldn't answer a word.<sup>10</sup>

"I'll teach you not to laugh at me again," growled the bear. "I am going to eat you and your two cows."

With these words the bear rushed up to the farmer with **wide open jaws**.<sup>11</sup>

The farmer now found his tongue<sup>12</sup> and cried in **terror**:<sup>13</sup> "Oh, please, Mr Bear, I couldn't help laughing!<sup>14</sup> I really couldn't! I beg you not to eat me. I promise never, never to laugh at you again."

"No, I think you will not laugh at me again. You will not have the chance,"<sup>15</sup> growled the bear. "I am going to eat you and your two cows on the spot."<sup>16</sup>

The poor farmer now begged with tears in his eyes that the bear would **spare him**<sup>17</sup> and his two cows. But it was all in **vain**.<sup>18</sup> The more he begged,

<sup>9</sup> It amuses us to see or hear something funny. <sup>10</sup> He was dumb with fright; he was so much afraid that he could give no reply. <sup>11</sup> The mouth has an upper and a lower jaw. The teeth are in the jaws. When we are much surprised, we often open our eyes wide. When it is very hot we like the windows to be wide open. <sup>12</sup> Or: was able to speak again. <sup>13</sup> Or: in great fear, because the bear looked so terrible. <sup>14</sup> Or: I had to laugh, it was impossible not to laugh. <sup>15</sup> Or: it will not be possible for you. <sup>16</sup> Or: at once, immediately. <sup>17</sup> Or: would not take his life, would let him live. <sup>18</sup> Or: it was all no good, the bear would not listen to his words.

the more **fiercely**<sup>19</sup> the bear **declared**<sup>20</sup> that he should be eaten.

**Finally**<sup>21</sup> the farmer said: "Only let me live until the evening, Mr Bear, so that I can plough and **sow**<sup>22</sup> this field. Then my family will not be without bread to eat when winter comes."

The bear **consented**<sup>23</sup> and went back into the forest, while the farmer returned with a heavy heart<sup>24</sup> to his ploughing.

Towards noon<sup>25</sup> a fox passed that way.<sup>26</sup>

"Why are you looking so sad, my poor man?" asked the fox kindly.

The farmer told him about the bear.

"Oh, if that is all,"<sup>27</sup> cried the fox cheerfully, "I can easily help you to save your own life and the lives of your two cows as well. And **besides**<sup>28</sup> you shall have the **skin**<sup>29</sup> of that bear for a warm **rug**."<sup>29</sup>

"But how can that be done, good Mr Fox?"

"What will you give me if I tell you?"

<sup>19</sup> Savagely. Fierce: *opp.* gentle. <sup>20</sup> Said. <sup>21</sup> At last, in the end; "r" is the final letter of "bear." <sup>22</sup> When the field is ploughed, the farmer sows the seed. The seed grows, and in the spring it becomes a plant. He sowed the field; he has sown it. <sup>23</sup> He said: "Very well," or, "It shall be so," or, "I will not eat you before the evening." <sup>24</sup> *opp.* with a light heart, cheerfully, gladly. <sup>25</sup> Or: about midday. <sup>26</sup> Or: came by. <sup>27</sup> Or: if it is nothing worse than that. <sup>28</sup> Or: what is more. <sup>29</sup> The skin of a bear is covered with long hair. We often use it for rugs, which are put on the floor. We also put them over our legs, when we are travelling in cold weather

At first the farmer did not know what to offer. Finally, however, it was **agreed**<sup>30</sup> that he should give the fox nine hens and a cock.

---

<sup>30</sup> The farmer said: "I will give so much," and the fox consented to this, saying: "Yes, that will do." He agreed to help the farmer if he gave him the ten birds.

## VIII. The Fox, the Bear, and the Farmer (2).

"Now listen to me," said the fox, "and do just as I tell you. When the bear comes this evening, I will be hiding in the bushes and blow a **horn**<sup>1</sup> just as the **hunters**<sup>1</sup> do. Then the bear will ask, 'What is that?' and you must answer, 'The hunters are coming.' The bear will be frightened and beg you to **conceal**<sup>2</sup> him. **Thereupon**<sup>3</sup> you will make him crawl into this big **sack**<sup>4</sup> and tell him not to **stir**.<sup>5</sup> Then I will come out of the bushes and ask, 'What is in that sack?' You will reply, '**Blocks**<sup>6</sup> of wood.' I will not believe it, and will say, '**Hit**<sup>7</sup> it here on top<sup>8</sup> with your axe.' You will **seize**<sup>9</sup> your axe and strike a mighty

---

<sup>1</sup> The ox has two horns on its head. A hollow horn is used by the hunter, who **hunts** foxes and bears. When the dogs hear the horn they come to the hunter. <sup>2</sup> Or: hide. He will want you to show him a place where he cannot be seen. <sup>3</sup> Or: then. <sup>4</sup> Corn, potatoes, etc., are kept in sacks. <sup>5</sup> Or: move. Do not stir: keep quite quiet. I stirred, I have stirred. <sup>6</sup> Big pieces. <sup>7</sup> Or: knock, strike. <sup>8</sup> The top is the highest part. The top of a tree, of a mountain, of a house. <sup>9</sup> Or: take into your hand.

**blow**<sup>10</sup> into the bear's head, so that he will die on the spot."

The farmer was pleased with this **advice**,<sup>11</sup> and he followed it to the letter.<sup>12</sup> Everything happened as the fox had said it would.<sup>13</sup> The bear fell into the **trap**,<sup>14</sup> and the farmer and his cows were saved.

"Did I not tell you that it would happen just so?" said the fox. "Learn from this, my friend, that **cleverness** is better than might.<sup>15</sup> I'll call in the morning for those nine hens and that cock. Let them be nice fat ones! And do you be at home, or you'll be sorry for it!"<sup>16</sup>

The farmer **loaded**<sup>17</sup> the bear on his **wagon**<sup>18</sup> and turned **joyfully**<sup>19</sup> **homeward**.<sup>20</sup> Then he ate a hearty supper, went to bed and slept **soundly**,<sup>21</sup> and felt little fear of the fox; for he had learned from this animal that cleverness is better than might.

<sup>10</sup> Or: strike heavily. <sup>11</sup> The fox told the farmer what he should do, he gave him good advice, he **advised** him.

<sup>12</sup> Or: exactly. He did everything the fox had told him,

<sup>13</sup> (that) it would (happen). <sup>14</sup> We catch mice in a trap. Hunters sometimes catch big animals by means of traps.

<sup>15</sup> It is better to be clever than strong. <sup>16</sup> Or: you'll suffer for it, you'll pay for it. Cp. V. 8. <sup>17</sup> Lifted. The bear was a heavy load.

<sup>18</sup> A farmer's carriage, for carrying sacks of corn, etc. <sup>19</sup> Gladly. *s.* joy, *v.* enjoy, **rejoice**. He enjoyed his supper: He ate a hearty supper. He rejoiced that his life had been saved: He was very glad not to have lost his life.

<sup>20</sup> Towards home. <sup>21</sup> Slept well. He was soon fast asleep (see III. 9), and did not wake once during the night.

Very early the next morning, when the farmer had scarcely<sup>22</sup> opened his eyes, the fox knocked at the door and **demanded**<sup>23</sup> the hens and the cock. "In a moment, Brother Fox, in a moment! Just give me time to dress," called out the farmer.

He dressed **hastily**,<sup>24</sup> but instead of opening the door, he stood still and began to bark loudly. "**Hallo**,<sup>25</sup> Farmer, what's that? That isn't a **hound**,<sup>26</sup> is it?" cried the fox **anxiously**.<sup>27</sup>

"Yes, indeed, Brother Fox, that's a hound barking. There are two of them. They slept here under the bed; but how they got here is more than I know."<sup>28</sup> They are trying to rush out. I can hardly hold them."

"Oh, hold them, I pray<sup>29</sup> you, until I can get out of this!"<sup>30</sup> cried the **terrified**<sup>31</sup> fox. "Never mind"<sup>32</sup> the hens nor the cock; you may keep them."

When the farmer opened the door, the fox was already **disappearing**<sup>33</sup> over the top of a high mountain. The farmer laughed heartily, and, if he's not dead, perhaps he's laughing still.

<sup>22</sup> Or: hardly. <sup>23</sup> Or: asked for, wanted to have. <sup>24</sup> He made haste, so as to be dressed quickly. <sup>25</sup> We sometimes exclaim, "Hallo!" when we are surprised. <sup>26</sup> A hunter's big dog. <sup>27</sup> The sound of barking made him anxious; he was afraid that a hound might be there. <sup>28</sup> I really cannot tell how they came under the bed. <sup>29</sup> Or: beg. <sup>30</sup> Or: away from here. <sup>31</sup> Much frightened, full of terror. <sup>32</sup> Do not trouble to fetch the birds. <sup>33</sup> Going out of sight; *opp.* to appear, come into sight.

## IX. The Pedlar's Pack.

A **pedlar**<sup>1</sup> was walking along a dusty road carrying his **pack**<sup>1</sup> on his back, when he saw a donkey by the wayside.

"Good day, friend," said he. "Perhaps you would not **mind**<sup>2</sup> carrying my load for me a little way?"

"What will you give me?" said the donkey.

"I will give you two pieces of gold," said the pedlar. But he really had no gold to give.

"Agreed,"<sup>3</sup> replied the donkey. So they **journeyed**<sup>4</sup> on together, the donkey carrying the pedlar's pack, and the pedlar walking by his side.

After a time they met a crow, and the donkey called out to him; "Good morning, black friend. Come and sit on my back, and drive away the **flies**."<sup>5</sup>

"What will you pay me?" asked the crow.

"I will give you three pieces of gold," said the donkey. But he, too, was making a **false**<sup>6</sup> promise, for he had no gold at all to give.

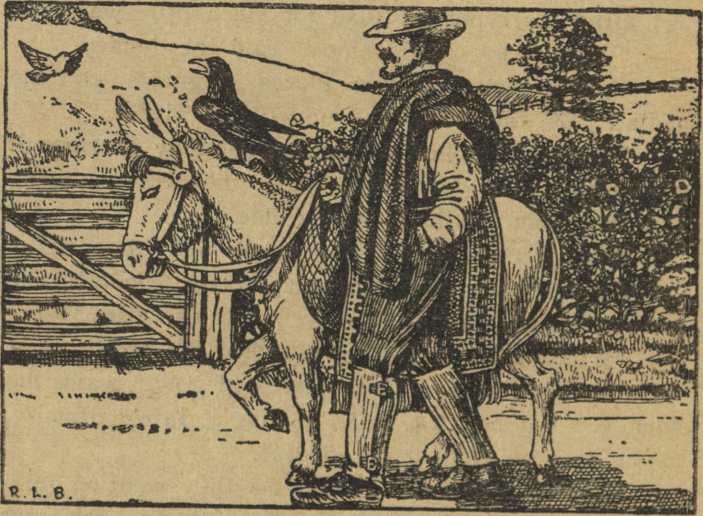
"Agreed," said the crow. So they went on quite cheerfully, the donkey carrying the pedlar's pack, and

---

<sup>1</sup> A pedlar is a man who sells all sorts of things. He packs his things together, and carries them in a pack; when he comes to a village, he unpacks his wares (what he has to sell) and shows them to people. <sup>2</sup> Or; you would be willing, ready. Would you mind doing this for me? = Will you please do it for me? <sup>3</sup> Cp. VII. 30. <sup>4</sup> Or: travelled; s. journey. <sup>5</sup> A fly is a little insect that flies. We see many flies when the weather is hot. <sup>6</sup> *opp.* true, good. He was promising what he could not give.

the crow sitting on the donkey's back driving away the flies.

After a time they met a sparrow, and the crow called out to it: "Good day, little cousin. Do you want to **earn**<sup>7</sup> some money? If so, bring me some



worms; for I have had no breakfast, and am very hungry."

"What will you pay me?" asked the sparrow.

---

<sup>7</sup> Or: make. When a man has done some work, he receives money for it; this money he has earned. That man earns 30s. a week. When a boy does his work very well, he earns the praise of his teacher.

"Let us say four pieces of gold," answered the crow grandly.<sup>8</sup> But he knew he could not do this, for he had no gold at all.

"Very well," said the sparrow; so on they went, the donkey carrying the pedlar's pack, the crow keeping the flies away from the donkey, and the sparrow bringing worms to the crow.

After a little while<sup>9</sup> they saw in the **distance**<sup>10</sup> a **good-sized**,<sup>11</sup> town. The pedlar took out from his pack some **shawls**,<sup>12</sup> and hung them over the donkey's back, that the **passers-by**<sup>13</sup> might see the fine things, and perhaps buy some of them. On the top of the pack lay a nice red shawl.

When the sparrow saw this bright shawl, he said to the pedlar: "What<sup>14</sup> will you take for that shawl? It looks like a good one. Name your **price**,<sup>15</sup> and you shall have it; for I am badly<sup>16</sup> in **want**<sup>17</sup> of a shawl." But as the sparrow had not a penny, he knew he could not pay for it.

---

<sup>8</sup> Like a grand person who has plenty of money. <sup>9</sup> Or: fairly soon, in a short time. <sup>10</sup> Or: far away; *a. distant*. That town is three miles distant from us. My friend lives in a distant land. Distant: distance; *cp. silent: silence*. <sup>11</sup> Of good size; *cp. four-footed, two-legged*. <sup>12</sup> Women often wear shawls around their shoulders, to keep them warm. <sup>13</sup> People going by, passing that way; *sing. passer-by*. <sup>14</sup> How much money. <sup>15</sup> If I want to buy this book, I must pay two shillings; the book costs 2s., the price of the book is 2s. Name your price: tell me how much money you want for this. <sup>16</sup> Here: very much. <sup>17</sup> Or: in need. I want it very much.

"The price of the shawl is five pieces of gold," said the pedlar.

"Too dear,"<sup>18</sup> said the sparrow. "I'll give you four pieces of gold for it, but five is too much."

"Agreed," said the pedlar; and he said, smiling to himself, "Now I shall be able to pay the donkey; I might not have known where to get the money."

The sparrow flew to the crow's side, and whispered in his ear, "Please, pay me the four pieces of gold you owe<sup>19</sup> me; for we are coming to a town, and I must turn back."<sup>20</sup>

"Four pieces of gold is really too much for bringing a few worms," said the crow, "but I will give you three, and you shall have them at once;" and he whispered in the donkey's ear—

"Friend, it is time you paid me<sup>21</sup> the three pieces of gold; the pedlar will stop at this town."

"On thinking it over,"<sup>22</sup> said the donkey, "it seems to me that three pieces of gold are a great deal too much to give for having a few flies driven away; I'll give you two."

Then the donkey turned to the pedlar, "Now, good sir, your two pieces of gold, if you please?"

<sup>18</sup> (The shawl is) too dear. It is not worth so much. Your price is too high. <sup>19</sup> If a man sells me a book for 2s., and I do not pay him at once, then I owe him 2s. <sup>20</sup> Or: return, go back. <sup>21</sup> Or: the time has come for paying me. <sup>22</sup> Or: on second thoughts.

"In a moment," replied the pedlar, and, turning to the sparrow, said, "I really must have the money for the shawl at once."

"So you shall," answered the sparrow, and cried angrily to the crow, "I want my money now, and cannot wait!"

"In an **instant**,"<sup>23</sup> answered the crow, and again whispered to the donkey: "Why don't you pay me my money? Be quick about it!"<sup>24</sup>

"I won't keep you waiting a minute," said the donkey. "Come, pedlar, give me money. I want it badly!"

Then the pedlar said to the sparrow, "Pay me for my shawl, or I'll make you suffer for it!"

And the sparrow cried to the crow, "give me my money, or it will be the worse for you!"

And the crow said to the donkey, "If you don't pay me, I'll bite off your ears!"

And the donkey again cried to the pedlar, "You bad man, pay me my money, or I'll **kick** you **across** the road!"<sup>25</sup>

They made such a noise, that an **officer**<sup>26</sup> came out of the town to see what it was all

---

<sup>23</sup> Or: moment. <sup>24</sup> Or: hurry up! <sup>25</sup> Donkeys and horses can kick with their hind legs. To give a **kick**. Across the road: from one side of the road to the other. They went across the field (or: crossed the field). <sup>26</sup> An officer (of **police**), a **policeman**. Policemen are seen in the streets. When we want to know the way, we ask a policeman. At night the policemen watch our houses.

about.<sup>27</sup> Each began to **complain**<sup>28</sup> loudly of the other.

"You are all **worthless**<sup>29</sup> fellows!" said the officer. "Come with me!" So he led them to the **mayor**.<sup>30</sup>

"Whom have we here?" cried he. "A pedlar, a donkey, a crow, and a sparrow! What have you to say?"

Then the pedlar began to complain of the sparrow, the sparrow of the crow, the crow of the donkey, and the donkey of the pedlar.

The mayor paid little **heed** to them;<sup>31</sup> but he looked at the pedlar's pack, and at last said: "You are good-for-nothing fellows! I **order**<sup>32</sup> that the pedlar be thrown into prison; that the donkey be soundly beaten; that the crow and the sparrow have their tail feathers pulled out. The shawl seems to be the only good thing here. I cannot let you keep the cause<sup>27</sup> of such a quarrel, so I will take it for myself. Officer, lead the prisoners away."

---

<sup>27</sup> What was the matter, why were they making such a noise, what was the **cause** of their quarrel? <sup>28</sup> They complained of each other: each said that the other had done him wrong. When the weather is bad, we complain of it. The officer listened to their **complaints**. <sup>29</sup> Not worth anything, of no **worth**, good for nothing. <sup>30</sup> The first man of the town. When people have a quarrel they go to him, and he helps them to agree. <sup>31</sup> He hardly listened (or: gave ear) to what they said, he did not heed (see V. 19) their words. <sup>32</sup> I order: I say what is to be done. That is my **order**.

## X. Dick Whittington and his Cat (1).

When Edward the Third was King of England,<sup>1</sup> there was a little boy called Dick<sup>2</sup> Whittington, whose father and mother died when he was very young. After their death he was just a **ragged**<sup>3</sup> little fellow, running about a country village. As poor Dick was



not old enough to work, he was very badly off.<sup>4</sup> He got little for his dinner, and sometimes nothing at all for his breakfast; for the people who lived in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Edward III. was king from 1327 to 1377. <sup>2</sup> Or: Richard; cp. Ned for Edward, Tom for Thomas, Bill for William, Joe for Joseph, Jack for John. See Bess, I. 35. <sup>3</sup> He was badly dressed, there were holes in his coat, he wore rags, See note 13. <sup>4</sup> He was poor, **unfortunate**; *opp.* well off.

village were very poor indeed, and often did not have enough for their own children.

Now Dick was a bright boy, although he was so poor. He was always listening to what everybody talked about. When the farmers sat drinking outside the village **inn**,<sup>5</sup> he would creep up to them, and listen. When the door of the **barber's**<sup>6</sup> shop was open, he would look in, so as to hear what was said by the barber and the men whose hair he was cutting or whose beard he was **shaving**.<sup>6</sup> They sometimes drove him away,<sup>7</sup> but he always came back again.

In this way Dick heard a great many<sup>8</sup> strange things about the great **city**<sup>9</sup> called London; for many of the country people at that time thought that everybody in London was a grand gentleman or a fine lady; and that there was singing and **music**<sup>10</sup> there all day long; and that the streets were all **paved**<sup>11</sup> with gold.

One day Dick saw a large wagon drive through the village. He thought that this wagon must be going to the wonderful town of London; so he asked

---

<sup>5</sup> Wine and **beer** are sold at an inn, and those who travel (**travellers**) can spend the night there. <sup>6</sup> We go to the barber or **hairdresser** when our hair is getting too long, or when we want to be **shaved**. Those who wear a beard do not get shaved; others like to be **clean-shaven**. <sup>7</sup> Or: made him run away. <sup>8</sup> Or: very many. <sup>9</sup> Or: town. <sup>10</sup> Music is made by means of **musical-instruments**, such as the **violin**. <sup>11</sup> Streets are paved with stone or with blocks of wood.

the **wagoner**<sup>12</sup> to let him walk with him by the side of the wagon. As soon as the wagoner heard that poor Dick had no father or mother, and saw by his ragged **clothes**<sup>13</sup> that he could not be worse off than he was, he told him he might go if he would.<sup>14</sup> So they **set off**<sup>15</sup> together.

He walked **beside**<sup>16</sup> the wagon for a long time, for there was a great distance<sup>17</sup> from the little village to London. Sometimes kind people gave him a little bread or some apples, but he was often hungry and tired. Still he went on, and at last he reached<sup>18</sup> London.

When he saw this great city, he ran as fast as he could; and he went through many streets, hoping to find one that was paved with gold. He knew that a piece of gold was worth a great deal, and he thought: "I'll pick up<sup>19</sup> some pieces from the street, and get much money for them, and then all will be well."<sup>20</sup> But he found no gold; and




---

<sup>12</sup> The wagoner drives the wagon. Cp. mill: miller; prison: prisoner. <sup>13</sup> We wear clothes to keep us warm. Dick's clothes were old and torn. They were ragged. <sup>14</sup> Or: wished to do so. <sup>15</sup> Or: started. <sup>16</sup> Or: by the side of. This chair is beside the table. <sup>17</sup> Or: a long way. <sup>18</sup> Or: came to, arrived in. <sup>19</sup> Or: take (from the ground). <sup>20</sup> Or: then I shall no longer be in want of food, clothes, etc.

at last he sat down in a dark corner and cried himself to sleep.<sup>21</sup>

Next morning he woke up very hungry, so he got up and walked about, asking the people to give him a halfpenny. Most of the people, however, seemed too busy to give any heed to him;<sup>22</sup> only two or three gave him a halfpenny. He was soon quite weak for want of food.

At last, when several days had gone by,<sup>23</sup> he laid himself down at the door of Mr Fitzwarren, a rich **merchant**.<sup>24</sup> Here he was soon seen by the cook, who was an **ill-tempered**<sup>25</sup> creature, and happened just then to be very busy getting ready the dinner for her master and mistress. She called out to poor Dick:

"What are you doing there, you lazy fellow? If you don't run away at once, I'll throw some of this hot water over you!"

Just then Mr Fitzwarren himself came home to dinner; and when he saw a dirty, ragged boy lying at the door he said to him: "Why do you lie there, my boy? You seem old enough to work; I am afraid you are **inclined** to be lazy."<sup>26</sup>

"No, indeed, sir," said Dick to him, "that is not the **case**, for I would work with all my heart <sup>27</sup>; but

---

<sup>21</sup> Or: cried until he fell asleep. <sup>22</sup> They had too much to do to listen to him. <sup>23</sup> Or: passed. <sup>24</sup> A merchant buys and sells. A corn merchant, a wine merchant. <sup>25</sup> She had a bad **temper**. She was not gentle and kind. <sup>26</sup> You like to do nothing, you are not fond of work. <sup>27</sup> Or: that is not true, for I should be very glad to work.

I do not know **anybody**,<sup>28</sup> and I think I am quite ill from want of food."

"Poor fellow, get up, so that I may see what is wrong."<sup>29</sup>

Dick tried to rise, but was obliged to<sup>30</sup> lie down again, for he was too weak to stand. He had not eaten food for three days and was no longer able to run about and beg a halfpenny of people in the street. So the kind merchant ordered him to be taken into the house,<sup>31</sup> and a good dinner was given to him. He was told to stay and help the cook as much as he could, doing the dirty work for her.

Dick was better off now; he had plenty<sup>32</sup> to eat and a bed to sleep in. He might have been quite happy, but for the cook,<sup>33</sup> whose temper<sup>25</sup> was very bad. She was always **scolding**<sup>34</sup> him, and sometimes she beat him. At last somebody told Alice, Mr Fitzwarren's daughter, how badly the cook was **treat- ing** Dick<sup>35</sup>; and Alice said that she would have to leave the house if she did not treat the poor boy better.

But there was another trouble for Dick.<sup>36</sup> His bed was in a little **garret**<sup>37</sup>; there were many holes

---

<sup>28</sup> Or: any person. <sup>29</sup> Or: what is the matter with you; see II. 7. <sup>30</sup> Or: had to. <sup>31</sup> Or: said to somebody: "Take him into the house." <sup>32</sup> Or: quite enough. <sup>33</sup> Or: if it had not been for the cook; if only the cook had not been so ill-tempered. <sup>34</sup> Or: telling him that he did his work badly. <sup>35</sup> Or: how unkind she was to Dick. She did not treat him well. <sup>36</sup> There was something else that made Dick unhappy, another cause of **unhappiness**. <sup>37</sup> A little room, near the roof.

in the floor and the walls, and great numbers of mice and rats came out of them at night, so that often he could hardly sleep. How could he **get rid** of them?<sup>38</sup>

The best way, thought Dick, would be to get a cat. Now and then he received a penny for holding a gentleman's horse; and with the few pence he had saved, he bought a cat. This cat he took into his garret, and there she stayed. He always brought her part of his dinner, and she also ate the mice and rats; soon not a single one was to be seen, and Dick could sleep quietly.



Not long after this Mr Fitzwarren had a ship ready to sail, taking **wares**<sup>39</sup> to distant lands. He was a kind master, and he was glad to give his **servants**<sup>40</sup> a chance of good fortune. He asked each of them what they would send out, so that it might be sold at a high price. They all knew what to send except Dick. Mr Fitzwarren asked him whether<sup>40</sup> he alone did not wish to send anything. Dick replied, that he **possessed**<sup>41</sup> nothing but a cat.

<sup>38</sup> Or: make them leave the garret, drive them away.  
<sup>39</sup> Things to be sold. <sup>40</sup> In a big house there are many servants. Some are in the kitchen, others keep the rooms clean. The ill-tempered cook and Dick were servants. <sup>41</sup> Or: had, I possess a house; it is my own.

"Fetch your cat, then, my good boy," said Mr Fitzwarren, "and let her go."

Dick went upstairs<sup>42</sup> and brought down poor puss,<sup>43</sup> with tears in his eyes, and gave her to the captain.<sup>44</sup> He had grown<sup>45</sup> very fond of the cat, and did not like the idea of being troubled<sup>46</sup> by the rats and mice, as he had been before he bought the cat.

The others laughed at Dick; but Miss Alice felt sorry for him, and gave him some money to buy another cat.

In other ways, too, she showed kindness to him. The cook felt angry at this, and treated him worse and worse, until he felt he could bear<sup>47</sup> it no longer, and thought of running away. So he packed up his few things and started very early in the morning. He walked as far as Highgate; and there he sat down on a stone, which to this day is called Whittington's Stone, and began to think which road he should take as he went on, away from London.

While he was sitting there, the six bells of Bow Church began to ring,<sup>48</sup> and their sound seemed to say to him:

"Turn again, Whittington,  
Lord Mayor of London."

<sup>42</sup> To his garret. <sup>43</sup> We call a cat "puss." <sup>44</sup> Every ship has a captain. <sup>45</sup> Or: become. <sup>46</sup> Or: it did not please him to think that he would be troubled. <sup>47</sup> Or: stand. <sup>48</sup> On Sundays we hear the ringing of the church bells. They rang for a long time; they have rung.

“Lord Mayor of London!” said he to himself. “I am ready to bear anything, even the bad temper of the old cook, if later, when I am a man, I am to be Lord Mayor of London.”

So he turned back, and was **lucky** enough<sup>49</sup> to get into<sup>50</sup> the house and start his work, before the old cook came downstairs.

---

<sup>49</sup> Or: fortunate enough, he had the good **luck** (good fortune). <sup>50</sup> Or: enter.

## XI. Dick Whittington and his Cat (2).

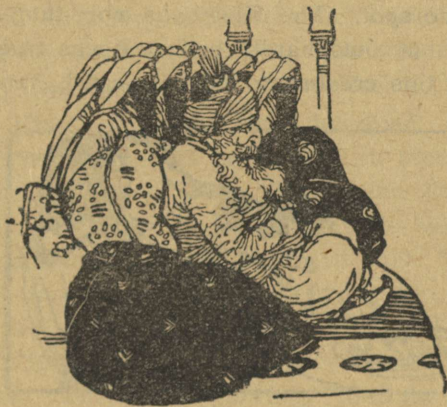
Mr Fitzwarren's ship was a long time at sea,<sup>1</sup> and was at last driven by the winds on a part of the **coast**<sup>2</sup> of Barbary,<sup>3</sup> where the only people were Moors, whom the English had never seen before. They soon came to the ship and **admired**<sup>4</sup> the fine wares and wanted to buy them.

The captain, however, sent **patterns**<sup>5</sup> of the best things he had to the king of the country, who was so much pleased with them, that he invited the captain

---

<sup>1</sup> It was a long time before the ship came to land. <sup>2</sup> The coast of a country is that part of it which is washed by the sea. <sup>3</sup> In Africa. <sup>4</sup> We admire a beautiful sunset, the flowers in spring, a clever man. The Moors said: “How beautiful these things are!” The wares filled them with **admiration**. <sup>5</sup> Not all the best things, but some of each kind. We sometimes ask a merchant to send us a pattern of his wares; if we like it, we tell him to send a dozen.

to a grand dinner at the **palace**<sup>6</sup>. On arriving there, he was given a seat near the King and the **Queen**.<sup>6</sup> Many **dishes**<sup>7</sup> were then brought in for dinner; but very soon a huge number of rats and mice rushed in, helping themselves<sup>8</sup> from almost every dish. The captain



wondered<sup>9</sup> at this, and asked one who sat next to him, if<sup>10</sup> this was not very unpleasant.

“Oh yes,” was the reply, “most unpleasant. The King would give almost<sup>11</sup> anything to get rid of them.

---

<sup>6</sup> The king and the queen (his wife) live in a beautiful palace. <sup>7</sup> Our food is placed on dishes in the kitchen, and then brought into the dining-room. <sup>8</sup> Or: taking what they pleased. <sup>9</sup> Or: was surprised. <sup>10</sup> Or: whether. <sup>11</sup> Nearly, not quite. We say: it is almost seven, when it will soon be seven. I have almost finished my work: it will be finished in a few minutes.

They eat part of his dinner, they go into his own room, and even run over his bed."

Then the captain had a happy thought<sup>12</sup>; he remembered the cat that poor Dick Whittington had given him, and told the King he had a creature **on board** the ship<sup>13</sup> that would kill all these rats and mice on the spot. The King was more than glad<sup>14</sup> to hear this, but could hardly believe it was true.<sup>15</sup> "Go and bring this creature to me," he cried, "and if it is



able to do what you say, I will load your ship with gold and **jewels**,<sup>16</sup> in **exchange**<sup>17</sup> for it."

The captain, who was a good **business man**,<sup>18</sup> replied: "I shall be happy to let you see the creature, but I am not sure whether I can sell it. The mice and rats might come and eat the wares in our ship."

<sup>12</sup> Or: a good idea. <sup>13</sup> Or: on the ship. <sup>14</sup> Or: rejoiced greatly, was delighted. <sup>15</sup> Or: it seemed too good to be true.

<sup>16</sup> Such as **diamonds, emeralds, rubies.** <sup>17</sup> I shall give you gold, if you give me the cat. <sup>18</sup> Or: who knew how to sell things at a good price.

“Run, run,” said the Queen. “I am anxious<sup>19</sup> to see the dear creature.”

So the captain went to the ship, while another meal was got ready and placed on the tables. He returned just as the mice and rats began to appear.<sup>20</sup> When the cat saw them, she jumped from the captain’s arms, and in a few minutes quite a number of rats and mice lay dead at her feet. The rest of them had run away and disappeared in their holes.

The King and Queen were delighted, and asked that the creature should be brought to them. So the captain called “Puss, Puss, Puss,” and she came to him. At first the Queen was afraid to **touch**<sup>21</sup> her; but the captain **stroked**<sup>22</sup> her, and said “Pussy” to her, and the Queen then stroked her too, and said “Pussy” as well as she could—for she did not know English. Then the cat was allowed to rest on the Queen’s lap, and sat there **purring**,<sup>23</sup> until she fell asleep.

The King said he must have the cat, so that he might never again be troubled by mice and rats. He agreed to buy the whole of the ship’s **cargo**<sup>24</sup> at a very good price, and paid ten times as much for the cat as for the cargo!

---

<sup>19</sup> Or: I very much want. <sup>20</sup> Or: show themselves. <sup>21</sup> To place her hand on the cat. <sup>22</sup> Passed his hand over the cat’s back. A father sometimes strokes the head of his little child. <sup>23</sup> When a cat is contented, she makes a noise which is called purring. <sup>24</sup> All the wares on board the ship; all that Mr Fitzwarren had put in the ship.

The captain then took **leave**<sup>25</sup> of the King and Queen, and after a happy **voyage**<sup>26</sup> arrived safe in London.

He made his way<sup>27</sup> to the house of his master, Mr Fitzwarren, who was delighted when the captain showed him some of the fine jewels he had received from the King of Barbary. The captain then told him of the rich present which the King and Queen had sent to Dick, in exchange for his cat. As soon as the merchant heard this, he told one of the servants to go and fetch him. "And be careful,"<sup>28</sup> he added, "to call him Mr Whittington."

Dick, at the time, was cleaning things in the kitchen, and his hands were dirty; but he had to do as he was told, and followed the servant to Mr Fitzwarren's room. He was asked to sit down on a chair; but he thought they were making fun of him,<sup>29</sup> and begged them to let him go back to his work. Then Mr Fitzwarren said:

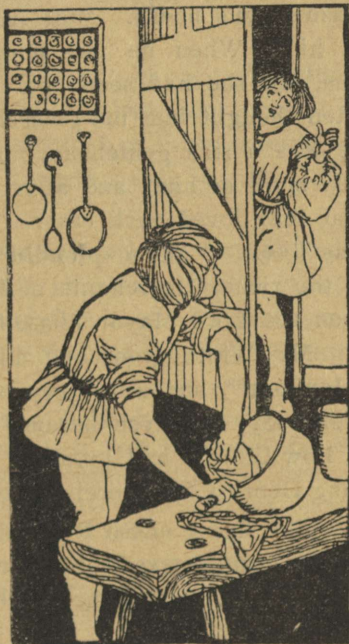
"Indeed, Mr Whittington, we are all quite in earnest with you, and I most heartily<sup>30</sup> rejoice in your good fortune; for the captain has sold your cat to the King of Barbary, and brought you in **return** for her<sup>31</sup> more **riches**<sup>32</sup> than I possess in the whole world; and I wish you may long enjoy<sup>33</sup> them."

<sup>25</sup> Or: said Good-bye. <sup>26</sup> A journey across the sea. <sup>27</sup> Or: went. <sup>28</sup> Or: take care, do not forget. <sup>29</sup> Or: laughing at him: *opp.* to treat seriously. <sup>30</sup> Or: with all my heart. <sup>31</sup> Or: in exchange for her, or: in place of her, instead of her. <sup>32</sup> Or wealth, money. <sup>33</sup> Feel joy. We enjoy a thing when it gives us joy. I enjoy a walk in the woods; it gives me pleasure to walk through the woods. See VIII. 19.

Then all the gold and jewels were shown to Dick, and he could hardly believe his eyes. He begged his master to take what part of it he pleased, since he owed it all to his kindness.

"No, no," answered Mr Fitzwarren. "This is all your own; and I am sure you will use it well."<sup>34</sup>

Dick then asked his mistress, and Miss Alice, to **accept**<sup>35</sup> a part of his treasures; but they would not, and at the same time told him that they rejoiced greatly at his good fortune. Dick was too **kind-hearted**<sup>36</sup> to keep it all to himself; he gave a present to the captain and to each of the servants in the house, not forgetting even the ill-tempered old cook.



<sup>34</sup> Or: make good use of it. <sup>35</sup> Or: take as a present.

<sup>36</sup> Or: had too kind a heart.

Then Mr Fitzwarren advised him to get himself dressed like a gentleman, and told him that he might live in his house as a friend until he should find a better house for himself.

When he was dressed in nice clothes, Dick was as handsome as any young man that visited Mr Fitzwarren's house. Miss Alice had always been kind to him. When he was poor, she had felt sorry for him, for she had seen how bright he was, and had often thought him too good for the kitchen. Now that he was a rich gentleman, and her father's friend, she saw more of him; and after some time her father saw that they loved each other. A day for the **wedding**<sup>37</sup> was **fixed**,<sup>38</sup> and a **splendid**<sup>39</sup> wedding it was. Many of the richest merchants in London were there, and even the Lord Mayor himself.

Mr Whittington and his lady lived in great **splendour**<sup>39</sup> and were very happy. He was liked by everybody, and even became Lord Mayor, as the bells of Bow Church had promised him, long before. From King Henry V.<sup>40</sup> he received the honour of **knighthood**.<sup>41</sup>

The figure of Sir Richard Whittington with his cat in his arms, **carved**<sup>42</sup> in stone, was to be seen till the year 1780 on the wall of the old prison of Newgate.

---

<sup>37</sup> Or: marriage. <sup>38</sup> They chose a day for the wedding.  
<sup>39</sup> Grand, wonderful, very fine; s. splendour. <sup>40</sup> He was King of England from 1413 to 1422. <sup>41</sup> He was made a knight.  
<sup>42</sup> Cut.

## XII. Rip Van Winkle (1).

**Whoever** has made a voyage up the Hudson<sup>1</sup> must remember the Catskill Mountains. They are a branch of the great Appalachian family,<sup>2</sup> and are seen away to the west of the river, **lording**<sup>3</sup> it over the surrounding country.

Every change of season, every change of weather, indeed every hour of the day, makes some change in the wonderful **hues**<sup>4</sup> and **shapes**<sup>5</sup> of these mountains, and all the good wives, far and near, say that they are **perfect**<sup>6</sup> **barometers**.<sup>7</sup>

At the foot of these mountains the traveller may have seen the light smoke rising up from a village, whose roofs **gleam**<sup>8</sup> among the trees. In that same village there lived many years ago, while the country

---

<sup>1</sup> Anyone who has sailed up the Hudson, a great river in the United States of America. New York is on the Hudson. We travel up a river, when we go farther and farther from its mouth, not in the same direction as the water. <sup>2</sup> They are part of the Appalachian Mountains. <sup>3</sup> A **lord** is a man of noble family. These mountains lorded it over the surrounding country; they seemed proud and grand. <sup>4</sup> Or: colours. <sup>5</sup> A ball has a round shape, it is round in shape. Draw the shape of a mountain on the blackboard. <sup>6</sup> A thing is perfect when it is as good as it can possibly be. We say "It is a perfect day," when the weather is very fine. Sometimes we say "perfectly" for "quite": These flowers are perfectly beautiful. <sup>7</sup> A barometer is an instrument which shows us what the weather will be. <sup>8</sup> Or: shine, are bright.

was a **province** of Great Britain,<sup>9</sup> a **simple**<sup>10</sup> **good-natured**<sup>11</sup> fellow, of the name of Rip Van Winkle.

The children of the willage would **shout**<sup>12</sup> with joy whenever he appeared. He **assisted**<sup>13</sup> at their games, made their **playthings**,<sup>14</sup> taught them to fly **kites**,<sup>15</sup> and told them long stories.

He was always ready to assist a neighbour even in the hardest work. The women of the village, too, used to **employ** him<sup>16</sup> to do such little **odd jobs**<sup>17</sup> as their less obliging<sup>18</sup> husbands would not do for them. In a word, Rip was ready to **attend** to<sup>19</sup> anybody's business but his own: and as to doing work at home, and keeping his farm in order, he found it impossible.<sup>20</sup>

He declared it was of no use to work on his farm. It was the most worthless little piece of ground in the whole country. Everything about it went wrong, and

<sup>9</sup> A province is part of a country. The country now called the United States belonged to Great Britain until 1776. <sup>10</sup> He was not very clever, did not think very much. <sup>11</sup> He had a good nature, a kind heart; he was not ill-tempered. Cp. good-sized (XI. 11). <sup>12</sup> They used to cry out aloud, it made them so happy to see him, they rejoiced when he came to them. <sup>13</sup> Or: helped them, gave them assistance. <sup>14</sup> Things that they could use in their games. <sup>15</sup> Kites are made of paper (or cloth) and wood. A long string is tied to them. The wind carries the kite along, but we hold one end of the string. Do you know the shape of a kite? <sup>16</sup> Or: make use of him. <sup>17</sup> Small pieces of work. <sup>18</sup> Ready to help, willing to do something for others. <sup>19</sup> Or: to see to, to look after. <sup>20</sup> It seemed to him that he could not do any odd jobs in his own house or attend to his farm.

would go wrong, in **spite** of him.<sup>21</sup> His children, too, were as ragged and wild as if they belonged to nobody. His son Rip, a boy in his own **likeness**,<sup>22</sup> promised to **inherit**<sup>23</sup> the habits with the old clothes of his father.

Rip Van Winkle, however, was one of these happy foolish fellows who eat white bread or brown, whichever can be got with least thought or trouble, and would rather **starve**<sup>24</sup> on a penny than work for a pound.

If left to himself, he would have whistled life away<sup>25</sup> in perfect **contentment**<sup>26</sup>; but his wife kept **continually**<sup>27</sup> scolding him for his **idleness**<sup>28</sup> and his **carelessness**.<sup>28</sup> Morning, noon, and night, her tongue was always going, and everything he said or did was sure to be wrong and to make her talk. Rip had but one way of replying to her scolding, and that, by

<sup>21</sup> Or: however much he worked, whatever he did. <sup>22</sup> Or: very much like him. Cp. bright, brightness; busy, business; cheerful, cheerfulness; clever, cleverness; dark, darkness; forgetful, forgetfulness; happy, happiness; kind, kindness; sad, sadness; ugly, ugliness. <sup>23</sup> When a father dies, his wife and children inherit what he has left. Here "inherit" means to receive from the father, although the father is still alive. <sup>24</sup> Or: die of hunger. <sup>25</sup> Or: spent his life in whistling, done nothing but whistle. <sup>26</sup> *Adj.* contented; in perfect contentment: quite happily, not wishing for anything better. <sup>27</sup> *v.* to continue (see I. 28); continually, without stopping. She was always scolding him. <sup>28</sup> Nouns to idle and to **careless**, *opp.* careful. Care, careless; cp. worth, worthless.

**frequent** use,<sup>29</sup> had grown into a habit. He **shrugged**<sup>30</sup> his shoulders, shook his head, but said nothing.

This, however, always led to a fresh scolding from his wife. So he thought it better to leave her, and to take to the outside of the house, — the only side which, in **truth**,<sup>31</sup> belongs to a lazy husband.

Rip's only friend in the house was his dog Wolf, who was as much **grumbled** at<sup>32</sup> as his master; for Dame Van Winkle thought them **companions**<sup>33</sup> in idleness.

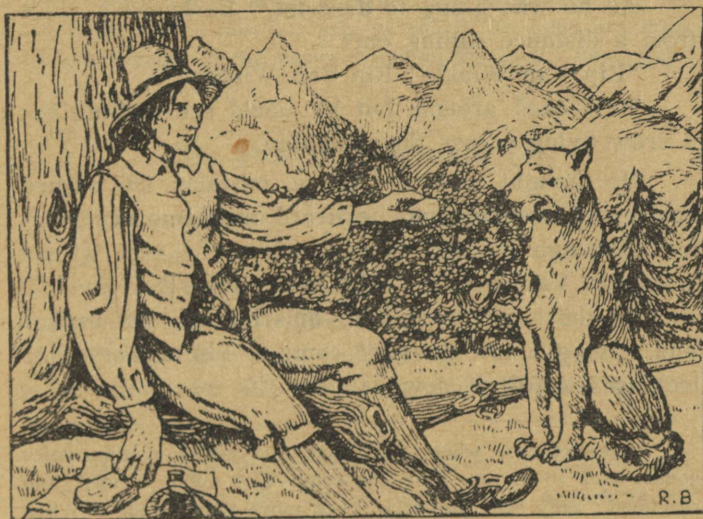
Often poor Rip felt he could stand<sup>34</sup> it no longer. To **escape**<sup>35</sup> from work on the farm and the loud tongue of his wife, he then took his **gun**<sup>36</sup> and wandered away into the woods.

Here he would sometimes seat himself at the foot of a tree. and **share**<sup>37</sup> his meal with Wolf, his companion.

<sup>29</sup> Or: because he did it so frequently (or: often). <sup>30</sup> A man shrugs his shoulders to show that he does not care. <sup>31</sup> *Adj.* true: cp. warm, warmth; long, length: strong, strength. <sup>32</sup> His mistress grumbled at him, she was unkind to him and showed it by her words. <sup>33</sup> They were idle together. When I go for a walk with a friend, he is my companion. <sup>34</sup> Or: bear. It was more than he could bear. <sup>35</sup> Or: get away. <sup>36</sup> A man who hunts has a gun with which he shoots rabbits, bears, wolves, birds, etc. I shot a rabbit; I have shot two crows. <sup>37</sup> He gave the dog part of his meal, the dog received a share (or: part) of it.

"Poor Wolf," he would say,<sup>38</sup> "your mistress treats you very badly; but as long as I am alive, you have a good friend."

Wolf would wag his tail,<sup>39</sup> and look up into his master's face, as if he quite understood, and felt no less sorry for Rip than Rip felt for him.



In a long **ramble**<sup>40</sup> of this kind on a fine autumn day, Rip had reached one of the highest parts of the Catskill Mountains. He was busy shooting<sup>36</sup> squirrels,

---

<sup>38</sup> Or: frequently said, used to say. <sup>39</sup> A dog, when pleased, wags his tail. Past: wagged; cp. beg, begged. <sup>40</sup> We **ramble** when we take a walk for pleasure, and go along slowly.

and the silent woods had **echoed**<sup>41</sup> and **re-echoed**<sup>41</sup> with the **reports**<sup>42</sup> of his gun.

At last he felt tired and threw himself, late in the afternoon, on a little green hill. From an **opening**<sup>43</sup> between the trees he could see all the lower country for many a mile of rich **woodland**.<sup>44</sup>

As he was going to **descend**,<sup>45</sup> he heard a voice from a distance calling out:

"Rip Van Winkle! Rip Van Winkle!"

He looked around, but he could see nothing but a crow flying across the mountain.

He thought he had made a mistake, and turned again to descend, when he heard the same **cry** ringing<sup>46</sup> through the still evening air:

"Rip Van Winkle! Rip Van Winkle!"

At the same time Wolf **bristled** up his back,<sup>47</sup> and, giving a low **growl**,<sup>48</sup> came to his master's side looking **fearfully**<sup>49</sup> down among the trees.

---

<sup>41</sup> Sometimes, when we shout, the sound of our voice comes back to us, we hear the **echo**. The woods **echoed** and **re-echoed**: they sent the echo back more than once. <sup>42</sup> When we shoot, there is a loud report, the gun goes "Bang!" <sup>43</sup> *Adj.* open; *v.* to open. Cp. to begin, beginning; to build, a building; to feel, a feeling; to live, a living; to warn, a warning. <sup>44</sup> Land covered with trees. <sup>45</sup> Or: go down (the hill). <sup>46</sup> The cry (*v.* to cry) sounded clearly, like a bell (see X. 48). <sup>47</sup> The hair of his back stood on end. <sup>48</sup> *v.* to growl. <sup>49</sup> Full of fear; cp. beautiful, careful, cheerful, delightful, dreadful, forgetful, harmful, hopeful, joyful, mournful, thankful, thoughtful, useful, wonderful.

Rip now felt a kind of fear coming over him. He looked anxiously in the same direction,<sup>50</sup> and **perceived**<sup>51</sup> a strange figure slowly climbing the rocks, and bending<sup>52</sup> under the weight of something he carried on his back.

---

<sup>50</sup> He turned his eyes towards the same place as the dog had done. <sup>51</sup> Or: saw, noticed, beheld. <sup>52</sup> He could not stand straight because of the heavy weight on his back. Past: bent.

### XIII. Rip Van Winkle (2).

He was surprised to see any human being in this **lonely**<sup>1</sup> place, but, supposing it to be some one of the neighbourhood in **need** of<sup>2</sup> assistance, he hastened<sup>3</sup> down to help him. The man bore<sup>4</sup> on his shoulder a fairly big **keg**<sup>5</sup> that seemed full of **liquor**,<sup>6</sup> and made **signs**<sup>7</sup> for Rip to come and assist him with the load.

As usual, Rip was ready to give his help, though he did not quite like the strange man's **appearance**.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The place was lonely because people rarely went there. <sup>2</sup> Or: wanting; *v.* to need. This poor man is in need of food. <sup>3</sup> Or: hurried. <sup>4</sup> Or: carried. <sup>5</sup> Beer or wine is kept in kegs. A keg is smaller than a cask. Casks and kegs are made of wood and are usually kept in the cellar. <sup>6</sup> Water, wine, beer, etc., are liquors. <sup>7</sup> He did not speak, but made signs with his hand or his head. <sup>8</sup> *v.* to appear; the man appeared (or: seemed) queer. Cp. assist, assistance; remember, remembrance.

Together they climbed up a **narrow gully**,<sup>9</sup> which seemed to be the dry bed of a mountain **torrent**.<sup>9</sup>

As they **ascended**,<sup>10</sup> Rip evey now and then<sup>11</sup> heard sounds, like distant **thunder**,<sup>12</sup> that seemed to come from a deep **ravine**.<sup>9</sup> He stopped an instant, but supposing it to be one of those passing thunder showers which often take place among the moutains, he went on. Passing through the ravine, they came to a **hollow**.<sup>13</sup>

On entering this hollow he perceived more strange things. In the middle was a **company**<sup>14</sup> of **odd-looking**<sup>15</sup> men playing at **ninepins**.<sup>16</sup> They were dressed in a queer **outlandish fashion**,<sup>17</sup> and all had beards, of different shapes and colours.

What seemed especially odd to Rip was, that though these people were amusing themselves, yet

<sup>9</sup> The water of a torrent (which is smaller and goes more quickly than a river) carries away the earth, and so has a deep bed. In the summer there is no water and the bed is dry. The sides are close together, and this makes a narrow gully, or ravine. When the sides are not so close together, the gully is not narrow, but wide. <sup>10</sup> *opp.* to descend. <sup>11</sup> Or: from time to time. <sup>12</sup> In a storm we sometimes hear the thunder, after seeing the **lightning**. <sup>13</sup> A hollow place. <sup>14</sup> A number of people, who work or play together. <sup>15</sup> Or: strange-looking; they had an odd appearance. <sup>16</sup> A game in which a man throws a heavy ball at nine pieces of wood, so as to throw them over. <sup>17</sup> They had such clothes as one might find in another country. They did not wear the same kind of clothes as Rip. The fashion (in clothes) changes every year; people do not always dress in the same fashion (or way).

their faces were quite serious, they uttered never a word, and were the most mournful **party**<sup>18</sup> of pleasure he had ever seen.

As Rip and his companion **approached** them<sup>19</sup>, they suddenly stopped their play and **stared** at him<sup>20</sup> in such a way that his heart was filled with fear.

His companion now emptied the contents of the keg<sup>21</sup> into large bottles, and made signs to him to wait on the company.<sup>22</sup> He did so with fear and trembling; they drank the liquor in deep silence, and then returned to their game.

After a time Rip grew less afraid. When no eye was fixed on him, he even drank some of the liquor, which he found very agreeable. He was by nature a thirsty fellow and soon raised the bottle to his lips again. As no one seemed to notice him, he drank several times. At last his head grew heavy, and before long he fell into a deep sleep.

On waking,<sup>23</sup> he found himself on the green hill from which he had first seen the queer old man. He rubbed his eyes. It was a bright sunny morning. The birds were hopping and twittering among the bushes, and the squirrels were busy on the branches of the trees.

---

<sup>18</sup> I invite my friends to a party on my birthday. <sup>19</sup> Or: came near to them. <sup>20</sup> They fixed their eyes on him, looked at him for some time. <sup>21</sup> Or: the liquor in the keg, what the keg contained. <sup>22</sup> Or: to pour out the liquor for the company, to fill their glasses. <sup>23</sup> Or: when he woke.

"Surely," thought Rip, "I have not slept here all night." He remembered what had happened before he fell asleep. The strange man with the keg of liquor,—the mountain ravine,—the hollow among the rocks,—the mournful party at ninepins,—the bottle.



"O! that bottle! that dreadful bottle!" thought Rip; "what **excuse**<sup>24</sup> shall I make to Dame Van Winkle?"

He looked round for his gun, but in place of the nice, clean gun he had taken with him, he found lying

---

<sup>24</sup> *v.* to excuse (see IV. 7). How shall I excuse myself? What shall I say to excuse myself?

by him one that was covered with **rust**,<sup>25</sup> and nearly falling to pieces. He now thought that the queer old man of the mountain had taken his own gun from him while he slept.

Wolf, too, had disappeared, but he might have wandered away in **search**<sup>26</sup> of a squirrel. He whistled after him and shouted his name, but all in vain. The echoes **repeated**<sup>27</sup> his **whistle** and **shout**,<sup>28</sup> but no dog was to be seen.<sup>29</sup>

He **determined**<sup>30</sup> to **revisit**<sup>31</sup> the hollow, and, if he met any of the party, to demand his dog and gun. As he rose to walk, he found himself **stiff**<sup>32</sup> and wanting in his usual **activity**.<sup>33</sup>

"These mountain beds do not agree with me,"<sup>34</sup> thought Rip, "and if this ramble should make me ill, I shall have to stay at home, and Dame Van Winkle will give me a nice time!"

<sup>25</sup> When a piece of iron is left in water, it soon becomes brown, it is covered with rust, it is **rusty**. <sup>26</sup> *v.* to search (see ll. 27). He had perhaps gone to search for a squirrel. <sup>27</sup> The echo repeats what we say, it says it again. The teacher sometimes says a word, and the boys repeat it. <sup>28</sup> *v.* to whistle, to shout. <sup>29</sup> Or: could be seen. <sup>30</sup> He said to himself: "I must go there again." <sup>31</sup> Or: to visit again. Cp. echo, re-echo; turn, return. <sup>32</sup> He could not move his arms and legs easily. <sup>33</sup> He was not as **active** as usual. A boy or a young man can move about quickly. An old man is less active, he moves **more** slowly, and gets tired sooner. <sup>34</sup> Sleeping in the mountains is not good for me.

With some **difficulty**<sup>35</sup> he made his way down; he found the gully which he and his companion had ascended the evening before; but, to his surprise, a mountain torrent was now **flowing**<sup>36</sup> down it.

He, however, managed to scramble up its sides, working his way through thick bushes.

He again called and whistled after his dog. He was only answered by the **cawing**<sup>37</sup> of idle crows, flying high in the air about a dry tree that **overhung** a sunny rock.<sup>38</sup>

What was to be done?<sup>39</sup> The morning was passing away,<sup>40</sup> and Rip felt very hungry for want of his breakfast.<sup>41</sup> He was sorry to lose his dog and gun; he feared to meet his wife; but he did not want to starve among the mountains. He shook his head, took up the rusty<sup>25</sup> gun, and, with a heart full of trouble and **anxiety**,<sup>42</sup> turned his step homeward.

As he approached the village he met a number of people, but none whom he knew, which rather surprised him, for he had thought that he knew everyone in

<sup>35</sup> *a.* difficult. With difficulty: *opp.* easily. <sup>36</sup> The water of a torrent flows from the mountains towards the lower land. <sup>37</sup> Some birds twitter or sing; crows caw. <sup>38</sup> The tree was on the top of the rock, and some of its branches hung over the edge. <sup>39</sup> Or: what could he do? <sup>40</sup> It was getting near noon. <sup>41</sup> Or: because he had had no breakfast. <sup>42</sup> *a.* anxious.

the country round.<sup>43</sup> Their dress, too, was of a different fashion from that to which he was used.

They all stared at him with signs of surprise also, and, whenever they looked at him, they all stroked their chins.<sup>44</sup> This led Rip, after a time, to do the same, when, to his surprise, he found his beard had grown a foot long.

He had now reached the edge of the village. A number of strange children ran close behind him, calling after him, and **pointing**<sup>45</sup> at his grey beard. The dogs too, not one of which he seemed to know, barked at him as he passed. The very village<sup>46</sup> was changed. It was larger, and there were more people in it.

There were rows of houses which he had never seen before, and those which he had often visited had disappeared. Strange names were over the doors, strange faces at the windows. Everything was strange.

Surely this was his own village, which he had left but the day before. There stood the Catskill Mountains. There ran the silver Hudson at a distance. There was every hill and **dale**<sup>47</sup> as it had always been. Rip did not know what to think of it.

"That bottle last night," thought he, "has made me see strange things!"

---

<sup>43</sup> In the country round his village, in the neighbourhood.

<sup>44</sup> They passed their hands over their chins; see XI. 22. <sup>45</sup> With their fingers. Point to the door, to the window. <sup>46</sup> Or: even the village. <sup>47</sup> The dale is between the hills or mountains. We ran over hill and dale, up and down hill.

## XIV. Rip Van Winkle (3).

It was with some difficulty that he found his own house, which he approached with silent fear, thinking every moment that he would hear the angry voice of Dame Van Winkle.

He found the roof fallen in, and the windows broken. A half-starved dog that looked like Wolf was near the door. Rip called him by name, but the dog showed his teeth,<sup>1</sup> and passed on.

"My very dog,"<sup>2</sup> sighed Rip, "has forgotten me!"

He entered the house, which, to tell the truth,<sup>3</sup> Dame Van Winkle had always kept in good order. It was empty. He called loudly for his wife and children. The lonely rooms rang for a moment with his voice, and then all again was silence.<sup>4</sup>

He now hurried to the village inn; but it was gone too. In its place was a **hotel**.<sup>5</sup> The appearance of Rip, with his long grey beard, his rusty gun, his strange dress, and a number of women and children behind him, soon **attracted** the **attention** of the men at the hotel.<sup>6</sup> They gathered around

<sup>1</sup> As if he wanted to bite Rip. <sup>2</sup> Or: even my dog. <sup>3</sup> She was an ill-tempered woman, but she *did* keep her house in good order. <sup>4</sup> No other sound was to be heard. <sup>5</sup> When we are travelling, we spend the night in hotels. A hotel is bigger and finer than an inn. <sup>6</sup> Made the men look at him. *v.* to attend; *a.* **attentive**. You listen attentively to the words of your teacher, you attend to what he says, you give him your full attention.

him,<sup>7</sup> and looked at him from head to foot with great **curiosity**.<sup>8</sup>

One of them came up to him and **inquired**<sup>9</sup> on which side he **voted**.<sup>10</sup> Rip stared at him with wide-open eyes.

A **self-important**<sup>11</sup> old gentleman asked him what brought him to the election<sup>10</sup> with a gun on his shoulder and all these women and children behind him.

"Alas! gentlemen," cried Rip, "I am a poor, quiet man, a **native** of this place,<sup>12</sup> and a **loyal**<sup>13</sup> subject<sup>10</sup> of the King."

Here the **bystanders**<sup>14</sup> all shouted: —

<sup>7</sup> Or: they all came round him. <sup>8</sup> They were surprised at his appearance and wanted to know who he might be. They were **curious** to find out who he was. <sup>9</sup> Or: asked. <sup>10</sup> There was an **election** at the time. During Rip's long sleep there had been a **war** between Great Britain and the Americans. The Americans were no longer **subjects** of King George III. of England; the United States of America were a **Republic**, with a **President**, not a King. They were going to have a new President, and some voted for one man, others for another. This man wanted to know to which man Rip would give his **vote**. <sup>11</sup> A man is self-important when he has a very good opinion of himself, when he thinks a good deal of himself. See l. 2. <sup>12</sup> Or: living in this place. This was his **native** village. Which is your native town? <sup>13</sup> A man is a loyal subject when he honours his king. <sup>14</sup> The people standing near him.



"A subject of the King of England! Away with him!"<sup>15</sup>

It was with great difficulty that the self-important man had **restored** order,<sup>16</sup> and, looking very serious indeed, demanded again of the **unknown**<sup>17</sup> **culprit**<sup>18</sup> what he came there for, and whom he was **seeking**<sup>19</sup>.

The poor man declared that he meant no harm, but only came there in search of some of his neighbours, who used to live near the inn.

"Well, who are they? Name them."

Rip thought for a moment, and inquired, "Where's Nicholas Vedder?"

There was silence for a little while, when an old man replied in a thin voice—

"Nicholas Vedder! why, he is dead and gone these eighteen years!

"Where's Brom Dutcher?"

"Oh, he went off to the **army**<sup>20</sup> in the beginning of the war.<sup>10</sup> Some say he was killed. He never came back again."

<sup>15</sup> Let us drive him away! <sup>16</sup> He did not find it easy to stop their shouting. It was some time before they were quiet again. <sup>17</sup> *opp.* known; cp. uncomfortable, unfortunate, unhappy unpleasant. <sup>18</sup> One who has done wrong. The bystanders thought that as he was a subject of King George III. he wanted to do them some harm. <sup>19</sup> Whom he wanted to find. He sought; he has sought. <sup>20</sup> He had become a soldier, and had fought in the American army.

"Where's Van Bummel, the **schoolmaster**?"<sup>21</sup>

"He went off to the wars too, was a great **general**,<sup>22</sup> and is now in **Congress**."<sup>23</sup>

Rip's heart grew heavy when he heard of these sad changes in his home and his friends, and at finding himself thus alone in the world. Every answer **puzzled**<sup>24</sup> him, too, for people talked about things which he could not understand. What war were they talking about? What was Congress? He did not want to ask after any more friends, but cried out—

"Does nobody here know Rip Van Winkle?"

"Oh, Rip Van Winkle!" exclaimed two or three. "Oh, to be sure! that's Rip Van Winkle over there, leaning against the tree." Rip looked and beheld a man just the same as he had been when he went up the mountain—**apparently**<sup>25</sup> as lazy, and certainly as ragged.

The poor fellow was now quite **confused**.<sup>26</sup> He did not know whether he was himself or another man. The self-important man then demanded who he was, and what was his name.

<sup>21</sup> He had taught the children in the village school.  
<sup>22</sup> A general is at the head of an army of soldiers. Give the name of a general in your own country. <sup>23</sup> Congress in the United States is the same as **Parliament** in Great Britain. What is it called in your country? <sup>24</sup> In every answer there was something strange which he could not understand. <sup>25</sup> As it seemed (or: appeared). <sup>26</sup> He did not know what to think of it all.

"I only wish I could tell," exclaimed he. "I'm not myself— I'm somebody else—I'm over there— no—that's somebody else got into my shoes. I was myself last night, but I fell asleep on the mountain and they've changed my gun, and everything's changed, and I can't tell what's my name, or who I am."

The bystanders began to look at each other, nod, and **tap** their fingers against their foreheads.<sup>27</sup>

There was a whisper, also, about taking his gun, and keeping the old fellow from doing harm, at the very thought of which the self-important man left them rather **hurriedly**.

At this very moment a fresh, **nice-looking**<sup>28</sup> woman made her way through the people to have a **look** at the **grey-bearded**<sup>29</sup> man. She had a healthy child in her arms, which, frightened at his appearance, began to cry.

"**Hush,**<sup>30</sup> Rip," she cried, "hush; the old man won't hurt you."<sup>31</sup>

The name of the child, the face of the mother, the sound of her voice, all brought back **memories**.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>27</sup> They touched their foreheads several times, as a sign that something was wrong in Rip's head. We sometimes tap at a door before going into a room. <sup>28</sup> She looked nice. <sup>29</sup> Having a grey beard; cp. fourfooted, good-natured, ill-tempered. <sup>30</sup> We say "Hush!" when we want someone to be silent, to stop talking. <sup>31</sup> Will not do you any harm. <sup>32</sup> We remember what has happened, we have memories of it.

"What is your name, my good woman?" asked he.

"Judith Gardinier."

"And your father's name?"

"Ah! poor man, Rip Van Winkle was his name, but it's twenty years since he went away from home with his gun, and he has never been heard of since. His dog came home without him; but whether he shot himself, or was carried away by the Indians,<sup>33</sup> **nobody** can tell. I was then but a little girl."

Rip had only one more question to ask, but he put it with a trembling voice: —

"Where's your mother?"

"Oh, she died but a short time ago." Then Rip put his arms round his daughter and her child.

"I am your father!" cried he; "young Rip Van Winkle once, old Rip Van Winkle now! Does nobody know poor Rip Van Winkle?"

All stood **amazed**,<sup>34</sup> until an old woman looked into his face for a moment and exclaimed —

"Sure enough! It is Rip Van Winkle! It is himself! Welcome home again, old neighbour! Why, where have you been these twenty long years?"

Rip's story was soon told, for the whole twenty long years had been to him but as one night.<sup>35</sup> The neighbours stared when they heard it. The self-

---

<sup>33</sup> The Red Indians are the true natives of America. Nobody: no one. <sup>34</sup> Or: greatly surprised, <sup>35</sup> Or: had seemed to him no longer than one night.

important man, on seeing that poor Rip was quiet and did not want to shoot anybody, had returned. When he heard Rip's story, he shook his head, and all the other bystanders shook their heads too.

To make a long story short, the company broke up<sup>36</sup> and returned to the more serious business of the election. Rip's daughter took him home to live with her. She had a nice, comfortable house, and a cheerful farmer for a husband, whom Rip remembered as one of the little boys who used to climb upon his back.

Rip used to tell his story to every **stranger**<sup>37</sup> that arrived at the hotel. Not a man, woman, or child in the neighbourhood but knew it by heart.<sup>38</sup> Even to this day they never hear a thunderstorm on a summer afternoon about the Catskill Mountains, but they say<sup>39</sup> that Hendrick Hudson<sup>40</sup> and his men are at their game<sup>41</sup> of ninepins.

---

<sup>36</sup> The people went away. <sup>37</sup> A stranger was one who passed through the village; not a native of the village. <sup>38</sup> Every single person knew the story. <sup>39</sup> Or: without saying. <sup>40</sup> The people thought that the man whom Rip saw carrying the keg was Hendrick Hudson. An Englishman called Hudson sailed up the River Hudson in 1609; it is after him that it was named. <sup>41</sup> Or: playing their game.

## XV. The Brave Cabin Boy.

Many years ago, when Charles II. was King of England,<sup>1</sup> there was a war between England and Holland. One stormy afternoon in the autumn an English **fleet**<sup>2</sup> was sailing along before the approaching **gale**.<sup>3</sup> The men were **disheartened**.<sup>4</sup> For days<sup>5</sup> they had been **cruising** around,<sup>6</sup> hoping to meet with some ships of the **enemy**,<sup>7</sup> but not a Dutch sail had been **sighted**.<sup>8</sup>

Suddenly upon the ears of the **eager**<sup>9</sup> **sailors**<sup>10</sup> broke the cry<sup>11</sup> of the **lookout**,<sup>12</sup> "A sail!" Immediately all eyes were busy searching the angry waters. Away on the **horizon**<sup>13</sup> appeared one, two, then more and more ships. The men watched them with the greatest **interest**.<sup>14</sup> "Are they ships of the enemy?"

---

<sup>1</sup> He was King of England from 1660 to 1685. <sup>2</sup> A number of ships, used for fighting, not to carry wares (like Mr Fitzwarren's ship that took Dick Whittington's cat). <sup>3</sup> A very strong wind. It is blowing a gale. <sup>4</sup> Or: had lost heart. They wanted to fight, but had not met the enemy. <sup>5</sup> For (many) days, for days and days. <sup>6</sup> Sailing about, this way and that; not from one place to another. <sup>7</sup> Those against whom they were fighting, the Dutch (the people of Holland). <sup>8</sup> They had not caught sight of a Dutch ship. <sup>9</sup> They were eager to meet their enemies, they wanted very much to fight. <sup>10</sup> The soldier fights on land, the sailor at sea. <sup>11</sup> The sailors suddenly heard the cry. <sup>12</sup> The sailor who has to look out, to tell the others what is in sight. <sup>13</sup> The line where the sky meets the sea. <sup>14</sup> It was very interesting for them to see the ships, they wanted very much to know what kind of ships they were.

"Perhaps they belong to a friendly **nation**."<sup>15</sup> "Are they coming on to battle, or will they fly when they **discover**<sup>16</sup> us?"

Nearer and nearer come the ships. There is now no doubt. They are Dutch **men-of-war**,<sup>17</sup> and they mean to fight.

Quickly the English ships are cleared for **action**<sup>18</sup>; officers and men are all ready at their places to **greet**<sup>19</sup> the enemy, when they come within **range** of the guns.<sup>20</sup> The Dutch are as eager for the fight as the English, and soon the **dashing**<sup>21</sup> of the waves and the howling of the wind are **drowned**<sup>22</sup> in the **roar**<sup>23</sup> of the cannon.<sup>20</sup>

On board the **admiral's**<sup>24</sup> ship the fighting has not stopped for a moment. The captain of the guns

---

<sup>15</sup> The British nation, the French nation, the German nation. <sup>16</sup> Or: see us, find out who we are. <sup>17</sup> Or: **battle-ships**, ships used for fighting a battle at sea. <sup>18</sup> All is made ready for fighting. The **deck** (top part) of the ships is cleared, everything is taken away that is not wanted. <sup>19</sup> Or: welcome. We greet our friends by saying "Good-morning."

<sup>20</sup> When they come so near that the guns (or **cannons**) can reach them. <sup>21</sup> When the weather is stormy, the waves dash against what is in their way: ships, rocks, etc. <sup>22</sup> When a man who cannot swim falls into the sea, he is drowned. A loud noise drowns a gentle sound, so that we cannot hear it. The noise of the cannons was so loud that the sailors could not hear the waves or the wind. <sup>23</sup> When the lion **roars**, smaller animals are terrified. <sup>24</sup> The admiral is at the head of the fleet. His flag floats on his ship, the **flagship** of the fleet.

approaches the admiral. "Sir," he says, "most of the guns are **disabled**."<sup>25</sup> Before the admiral can reply, another officer tells him that the ship is in a **dangerous condition**.<sup>25</sup> "Unless we get help soon,"<sup>26</sup> nothing can save the ship."

The admiral looks around. What his officers say is true: his deck is covered with dead and dying sailors; his ship is **entirely**<sup>27</sup> surrounded by the ships of the enemy; he cannot **signal**<sup>28</sup> any of the other English ships, for the smoke from the guns hangs like a great fog, cutting them off from his sight.<sup>29</sup>

Quickly the admiral writes a short **note**,<sup>30</sup> asking the other English ships to come to his assistance. With the note in his hand, he speaks to his sailors: "Men, we must have help at once from the rest of the fleet. I will give fifty pounds to the man who

<sup>25</sup> They are of no use, it is impossible to shoot with them, because they have been hit by the cannons of the enemy. The ship, too, has been hit, and it may soon sink (go down in the water). The ship sank; it has sunk. There is **danger** that it may sink. It is dangerous to walk over thin ice. My friend is very ill, the doctor says that his condition is dangerous: I hope he will soon be out of danger.

<sup>26</sup> Or: if we do not get help soon, if we are left to ourselves.

<sup>27</sup> Or: altogether, quite, on all sides; *opp.* **partly**. <sup>28</sup> Or; make a sign to. On ships this is done by means of flags. He signals: he signalled; *cp.* travel: travelled. <sup>29</sup> So that he cannot see them. <sup>30</sup> A letter containing only a few words.

will take this note to the **commander**<sup>31</sup> on one of our other ships. Who will **volunteer**?<sup>32</sup>

Immediately a number of men step forward, but the little **cabin**<sup>33</sup> boy, pushing them back with his small hands, comes eagerly to the front.



“Oh, Sir Admiral, let me go,” he **pleads**.<sup>34</sup> “I can swim as well as any man. I am so little that

---

<sup>31</sup> The admiral is in **command** of the fleet, and each ship has its comander. <sup>32</sup> Who is willing to do this? The admiral did not say: “One of you *must* do this.” <sup>33</sup> A cabin is the little room in which we sleep when on a ship. The cabin boy had to keep the cabins in order. <sup>34</sup> Or: begs earnestly.

the Dutch can't see me, and I am not needed here so much as a man. Do let me go!"

"You shall go, my brave boy," answers the admiral.

The boy took the note, and folding it as small as possible, put it into his mouth. Then throwing off<sup>35</sup> his coat and boots, he slipped into the stormy sea, and was soon out of sight.<sup>36</sup>

Shortly afterwards<sup>37</sup> a loud British cheer,<sup>38</sup> rising above<sup>39</sup> the thunder of guns and the noise of battle, told the listeners<sup>40</sup> on the flagship<sup>24</sup> that the boy had reached the other ship. Soon the flagship, reinforced<sup>41</sup> by the other ships, was able to drive off the Dutch fleet, and add another to Britain's naval victories.<sup>42</sup>

Next morning all the men on the flagship were ordered on deck.<sup>43</sup> There their admiral told them of the little cabin boy. Then calling the boy to him and offering him a purse,<sup>44</sup> the admiral said: "Here is the fifty pounds I promised to the man who would

---

<sup>35</sup> Taking them off quickly. <sup>36</sup> Or: had soon disappeared.

<sup>37</sup> Or: a little while after. <sup>38</sup> Cries of delight, shouts of admiration; coming from the ship which the cabin boy had reached.

<sup>39</sup> Or: louder than, drowning (see note 22). <sup>40</sup> Those who were listening. <sup>41</sup> Or: helped, assisted. <sup>42</sup> In a battle, one side loses, the other wins the victory, is victorious. This was a naval victory, because it was won at sea, by the fleet or navy.

<sup>43</sup> They were told to come on deck (see note 18). <sup>44</sup> Money is carried in a purse.

carry my note. Take it, boy, for well have you earned it."

But the boy drew himself up<sup>45</sup> proudly. "No, no, I won't have it!" he cried. "I didn't do the job<sup>46</sup> for money! I did it for love of the flag!<sup>47</sup> And I'm glad if you are **satisfied!**"<sup>48</sup>

Then what a cheer burst from the men!<sup>49</sup> One might have thought<sup>50</sup> they had won another victory.

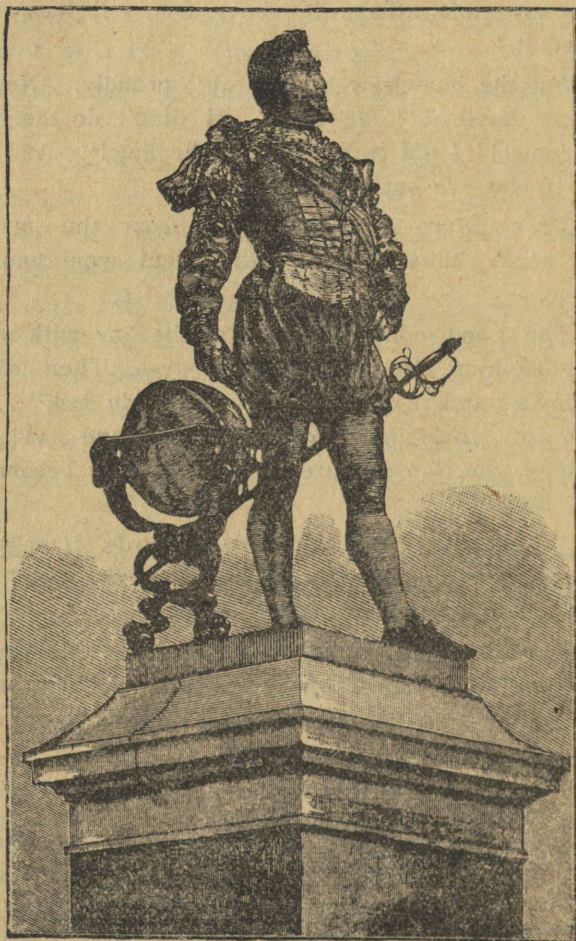
The good admiral looked at the boy with pride and something else shining in his eyes. Then taking the boy's hand in his own, he said. "My **lad,**<sup>51</sup> I am proud of you, and some day England will be proud of you, for you are surely going to become a great man."

"Think of it!" said the boy afterwards. "Our great admiral shook hands with me before all the men! Oh, wasn't that **worth**<sup>52</sup> hundreds of pounds!"

And the best of the whole story is this—every word that the admiral spoke came true. The brave little cabin boy became one of England's greatest admirals—Sir Cloudesley Shovel.

---

<sup>45</sup> He stood straight, lifted up his head. <sup>46</sup> This piece of work. <sup>47</sup> Or: because I love the flag of my country, the British flag. <sup>48</sup> Or: contented; if you think I have done my duty. When you do your work well, your parents are satisfied. <sup>49</sup> How loudly they **cheered!** <sup>50</sup> It seemed as though . . . <sup>51</sup> A lad is older than a boy, but not yet a man. <sup>52</sup> It was as good as, had the same worth as.



STATUE OF SIR FRANCIS DRAKE ON PLYMOUTH HOE.

## XVI. The Sea King of Devon (1).

Plymouth Hoe is a **rocky**<sup>1</sup> **ridge**,<sup>2</sup> which **overlooks**<sup>3</sup> Plymouth Sound, an arm of the English Channel.<sup>4</sup> It **forms** part<sup>5</sup> of Plymouth,<sup>6</sup> our second great naval **seaport**,<sup>7</sup> and the largest town in Devonshire.<sup>6</sup>

Sir Francis Drake, one of the most **famous**<sup>8</sup> of English sailors was born in this **county**,<sup>9</sup> and to-day his **statue**<sup>10</sup> stands on Plymouth Hoe. There the "Sea King of Devon," as he is called, is shown standing by the side of the **globe**,<sup>10</sup> round which he was the first Englishman to sail.

Henry the Eighth was King of England<sup>11</sup> when Francis Drake was born, and he lived through the

<sup>1</sup> s. rock ; cp. angry ; bush, bushy ; dust, dusty ; fun, funny ; health, nealthy ; heart, hearty ; hunger, hungry ; luck, lucky ; might, mighty ; mist, misty ; rust, rusty ; shade, shady ; sleep, sleepy ; sun, sunny ; thirst, thirsty ; wealth, wealthy. <sup>2</sup> A long, narrow hill-top. <sup>3</sup> Looks over, is above. <sup>4</sup> The sea between England and France. <sup>5</sup> Or : is a part. <sup>6</sup> Find Plymouth and Devonshire on the **map** of England. <sup>7</sup> A town with a **harbour**, where ships can go when the weather is stormy. <sup>8</sup> He made a great name for himself, people did him great honour. He became very famous, won great **fame** for himself. Fame, famous ; cp. danger, dangerous ; industry, industrious ; victory, victorious ; anxiety, anxious ; curiosity, curious. <sup>9</sup> Devonshire, Surrey, Kent, Yorkshire are counties. <sup>10</sup> His figure carved in stone. See the picture on p. 84, which also shows the globe, the world. <sup>11</sup> Henry VIII. became King (or : ascended the **throne**) in 1509 ; Edward VI. in 1547 ; Mary became Queen in 1553, and Elizabeth in 1558 ; she reigned till her death in 1603. Drake lived from 1540 to 1596.

**reigns**<sup>11</sup> of Edward the Sixth and Mary, but the deeds which made him famous were done in the reign of their sister Elizabeth.

The boy Drake spent much of his time looking at the ships in Plymouth Harbour,<sup>7</sup> and talking with the **seamen**,<sup>12</sup> some of whom had visited many distant lands. Among these was Captain, afterwards Sir John, Hawkins, who was Drake's cousin and who had already made for himself a name as a brave sailor. Hawkins took a great **fancy** to<sup>13</sup> his young cousin, and often sat with him, and told him long and exciting stories about his **adventures**<sup>14</sup> at sea.

Francis was still a lad, when he was **engaged**<sup>15</sup> by the **owner**<sup>16</sup> of a small **coasting vessel**,<sup>17</sup> and for several years he stayed on the **tiny**<sup>18</sup> boat, of which he became master when the owner died. It is said, that before his first voyage was over, he knew as well how to **hoist**, **trim**, and take in sail<sup>19</sup> as his master, and that the **latter**<sup>20</sup> was so surprised at the

---

<sup>12</sup> Or: sailors. <sup>13</sup> Or: became very fond of, came to like him very much. <sup>14</sup> All that had happened to him. <sup>15</sup> Taken as a sailor, receiving money for what he did. <sup>16</sup> The boat was his own, he **owned** it, he was its owner. <sup>17</sup> A small ship that sails along the coast, from town to town, not across the sea. <sup>18</sup> Very small. <sup>19</sup> To hoist sail is to put up the sails; *opp.* to take in sail. To trim sail is to put up such sails as are wanted. <sup>20</sup> That is, his master. I met my cousin and his father; the **former** (my cousin) was looking well, but the **latter** (his father) was not.

**quickness**<sup>21</sup> with which young Drake did his work, that he declared to him he was born to be a great sailor.

When he was about twenty-five, Francis Drake **joined**<sup>22</sup> Sir John Hawkins, who agreed to take his brave and **sturdy**<sup>23</sup> young **kinsman**<sup>24</sup> into his **service**.<sup>25</sup> He made him **mate**<sup>25</sup> of his own ship, and not long afterwards gave him a share of the **profits**<sup>26</sup> of the voyages they made.

His first sea-fight took place on the other side of the Atlantic Ocean, off the coast of America, where the small fleet of six English ships was **attacked**<sup>27</sup> by a number of Spanish men-of-war. Four of the English ships were sunk, and only two, — the one **commanded**<sup>28</sup> by Hawkins, and the other by Drake — reached England in safety.

In his first fight with the Spaniards, Drake lost almost everything he had in the world. He **applied** to Spain<sup>29</sup> to pay him the **value** of the **property** he

<sup>21</sup> *a.* quick. <sup>22</sup> He went with him. We are going for a walk; will you join us? I am going to Plymouth, where my brother will join me. <sup>23</sup> Healthy, strong, and active. <sup>24</sup> Or: relation. <sup>25</sup> He was to **serve** under him. Dick Whittington was in Mr Fitzwarren's service, he was his servant, Drake, however, was not a servant. A cook is a servant, but not a mate. A mate is an officer on a merchant ship. <sup>26</sup> If I buy a thing for 2s. and sell it for 2s. 6d., my profit is 6d. <sup>27</sup> The Spanish ships attacked the English, they began to fight, they fired at them. <sup>28</sup> See command, commander (XV. 31). <sup>29</sup> He asked the King of Spain.

had lost,<sup>30</sup> but in vain. This made him so angry, that he declared he would take all he could from the King of Spain, and from that day he never missed a chance<sup>31</sup> of attacking Spanish ships wherever he could find them.

With two small vessels, he again crossed<sup>32</sup> the Atlantic, and **succeeded** in taking<sup>33</sup> several Spanish ships, so that, **within** a year,<sup>34</sup> he returned to England, with his two little vessels loaded with gold and silver and many other valuable<sup>30</sup> things.

His fame<sup>3</sup> was now so great, and he had so much money, that he could choose **his crews**<sup>35</sup> from among the braves and most **skilful**<sup>36</sup> sailors in the land. He therefore again set sail with two vessels, crossed the Atlantic, burnt a Spanish town, and took a number of Spanish ships.

It was while on this voyage that Drake looked for the first time on the great Pacific Ocean, which stretches from the western shores of America, a distance of 10,000 miles, to the eastern shores of Asia.

At the head of a party of Englishmen and Indians, Drake **marched**<sup>37</sup> across the **Isthmus** of Pana-

---

<sup>30</sup>To pay him as much money as the things were worth which he had lost. The value (*a. valuable*) of this book is 6s. The book is my property, it is mine, it belongs to me.

<sup>31</sup> He did it whenever he had he chance, whenever he could.

<sup>32</sup> Or : sailed across, <sup>33</sup> Or : managed to take. <sup>34</sup> Or : in less than a year, before a year was over. <sup>35</sup> The sailors on a ship are its crew. <sup>36</sup> Or : clever. <sup>37</sup> Soldiers march 10 or 15 miles a day.

ma, which joins North and South America.<sup>38</sup> Friendly Indians had told Drake that from the highest point of the ridge two great seas could be seen—the Atlantic, which he had **already** crossed, and the Pacific, of which he had only heard.

On the twelfth day the party reached a **height**<sup>39</sup> lying east and west, like a ridge, between the two seas, when the Indian **chief**<sup>40</sup> took Drake by the hand, and asked him to follow him.

“Here,” writes one who was present, “was a high tree, in which the Indians had cut and made steps to ascend to the top, from where we beheld the Atlantic Ocean, from which we came, and the South Pacific, so much desired.

“South and north of this tree, the Indians had felled certain trees, that the **view** might be the clearer.<sup>41</sup> After our Captain had ascended with the chief and, having a clear day, had seen the sea, of which he had heard such golden reports,<sup>42</sup> he **besought**<sup>43</sup> **Almighty**<sup>44</sup> God in His **goodness**<sup>45</sup> to give him life and health to sail once in an English ship on that sea.”

---

<sup>38</sup> See the map of America. <sup>39</sup> A high place. High, height  
cp. contain, content; fly, flight; freeze, frost; weigh, weight.

<sup>40</sup> The man in command of the Indians. <sup>41</sup> Or: that one might see it better. There was a view from this high tree.

<sup>42</sup> Or: such wonderful stories. <sup>43</sup> To beseech is to beg earnestly.

<sup>44</sup> Able to do all things. <sup>45</sup> a good.

When he had once seen the Pacific Ocean, Drake knew no rest<sup>46</sup> until he had **explored**<sup>47</sup> the unknown sea, and floated the flag of England above these waves, where until then only the ships of Spain and Portugal had been seen.

It was on Sunday, the 9th of August 1573, that the **weather-beaten**<sup>48</sup> ships made their **entrance**<sup>49</sup> into Plymouth Harbour. The sight of the old grey **cliffs**<sup>50</sup> made the hearts of the **adventurers**<sup>51</sup> beat with delight. Flags were run up to the mast heads, **trumpets**<sup>52</sup> were blown, drums were beaten, the ships cast **anchor**,<sup>53</sup> and the travellers found themselves once more at home.

---

<sup>46</sup> Could not rest. <sup>47</sup> To explore a country is to go through and find out all about it. <sup>48</sup> Beaten by the weather. They had been through many storms. <sup>49</sup> *v.* to enter; *cp.* appear, appearance; assist, assistance; remember, remembrance. <sup>50</sup> rocks on the coast. In the South of England they are white or grey, and are of chalk. <sup>51</sup> One who seeks adventures (see note 14) is an adventurer. <sup>52</sup> The trumpet is a musical instrument. <sup>53</sup> When a ship stops sailing, the anchor is cast and keeps the ship in its place.

## XVII. The Sea King of Devon (2).

Queen Elizabeth had been nearly twenty years on the throne of England, when Drake set out on his famous voyage to sail an English ship on the Pacific Ocean. The Queen had been told that he

**intended**<sup>1</sup> to explore the great ocean, and before he set out she gave him a **sword**.<sup>2</sup> As she did so, she said —

“Receive this sword, Francis Drake, and wear it till we **require**<sup>3</sup> it of **thee**.<sup>4</sup> And we do **count**, Drake, that he that striketh at thee striketh at us<sup>4</sup>.“

Only a few friends were told the **purpose** of the voyage.<sup>5</sup> Drake was afraid that, if it became known, some other sailor might try to win the honour that he intended for himself. Then, again, it was very **important** that Spain should not have any idea of his purpose,<sup>6</sup> for at that time the Spaniards **regarded**<sup>7</sup> the seas round about South America as their own.

In a short time, five fine vessels were **anchored**<sup>8</sup> in the quiet waters of Plymouth Sound. These vessels contained **provisions**<sup>9</sup> for a long and **doubtful**<sup>10</sup> voyage,

<sup>1</sup> he had determined to do it, it was his wish to do it.  
<sup>2</sup> Officers in the army have a sword, with which they can cut the enemy. <sup>3</sup> here: ask it back. I require a pen: I need it.  
<sup>4</sup> We (I, the Queen) shall feel that if any one strikes you it is as though he struck us. People used to say “striketh“ for “strikes“ and “**thou**“ (nom.), thee (acc.) for “you.“ “Count“ here: think, feel, be of opinion. <sup>5</sup> What was to be done on this voyage, where they were going, what they wanted to do.  
<sup>6</sup> It would have done harm if the Spaniards had known that Drake wanted to sail on the Pacific Ocean; they must not know about it. Cp. self-important, XIV. 11. <sup>7</sup> Or: looked upon. <sup>8</sup> Or: were at anchor (see XVI. 53). <sup>9</sup> Or: food. <sup>10</sup> *v.* doubt; it was uncertain, how long they would be at sea, whether they would reach the Pacific Ocean.

with a good **supply**<sup>11</sup> of cannons. The company **consisted** of<sup>12</sup> one hundred and sixty-four gentlemen and sailors, a band of **musicians**,<sup>13</sup> and a number of skilful cooks. It seemed as though they were setting out on a voyage of pleasure, rather than one of danger.

Drake's **object**<sup>14</sup> was to cross the Atlantic, and with as little **delay** as possible<sup>15</sup> pass through the **Strait** of Magellan.<sup>16,21</sup> This was all the more **daring**,<sup>17</sup> as the Spaniards had given up sailing their ships through the strait, **on account of**<sup>18</sup> its many dangers. It was even said that the **passage**<sup>19</sup> was closed up and that no vessels could pass through.

Sailors were in the habit of declaring that no **discoverer**<sup>20</sup> could sail on the Pacific Ocean and live.

<sup>11</sup> A large number; they were well **supplied** with cannons, they had many on board. <sup>12</sup> Or: There were altogether. <sup>13</sup> People who know how to play musical instruments. A number of musicians who play together is called a band. <sup>14</sup> Or: purpose, what he wanted to do. It is your object to learn English. <sup>15</sup> Or: as quickly as possible. If the Spaniards knew of his purpose, they would delay him by attacking his ships. Stormy weather often delays ships. <sup>16</sup> Look for this on your map; then you will know what a strait is. <sup>17</sup> He was a brave man, and so he dared to do this dangerous thing. <sup>18</sup> Or: because of. The Spaniards no longer went that way, because they were afraid of the dangers. <sup>19</sup> Or: the strait, through which Drake wanted to pass. <sup>20</sup> *v.* to discover (see XV. 16). Drake wanted to explore the Pacific Ocean, to discover new ways for ships, new countries.

Magellan<sup>21</sup> himself had been killed by **savages**<sup>21</sup> on its islands, and Balboa,<sup>22</sup> the first European to set eyes on the Pacific, had met with a **violent**<sup>22</sup> death.

Drake knew all this, the **knowledge**<sup>23</sup> did not in the least **daunt**<sup>24</sup> his sturdy **spirit**.<sup>25</sup> He knew that the shortest way to reach the Pacific by water was to pass through the Strait of Magellan, and therefore he made up his mind to go that way, or to **perish**<sup>26</sup> in the **attempt**.<sup>27</sup>

The little fleet set sail from Plymouth in November, and it was not until early in April that Drake sighted South America. For some distance along the coast, Drake could not find a secure<sup>28</sup> **haven**<sup>29</sup> for his ships, and several times they were separated, until at length<sup>30</sup> they all met at the mouth of the River Plate, where they came to an anchor.

Once more **proceeding**<sup>31</sup> south, it was late in August when the commander gave the **signal**<sup>32</sup> to enter the famous strait. It seemed dangerous enough, as the

---

<sup>21</sup> Magellan was born in Portugal about 1470. He passed through the strait called after him in 1520, and entered the ocean which he called "Pacific," because the weather was fine and the sea smooth. In the following year he was killed by the savage natives of an island in the Pacific. <sup>22</sup> The Spaniard Balboa was born in 1475. He first looked upon the Pacific in 1513 and was **beheaded** (his head was cut off) in 1517. This was a violent (*opp.* **natural**; *s.* nature) death. <sup>23</sup> *v.* to know. <sup>24</sup> Or: frighten, make him turn back. <sup>25</sup> Or: heart. <sup>26</sup> Or: to die. <sup>27</sup> *v.* to **attempt**, to try; in the attempt, in trying to reach the Pacific. <sup>28</sup> Or: safe. <sup>29</sup> Or: harbour, port. <sup>30</sup> Or: at last. <sup>31</sup> going on, sailing on. <sup>32</sup> Or: signalled (see XV. 28).

sailors looked **ahead**.<sup>33</sup> The **winding**<sup>34</sup> passage seemed too narrow for their ships, and the wind blew so hard<sup>35</sup> that they would be dashed on the rocks on either hand.<sup>36</sup>

Each morning there was a heavy frost. Snow fell, and it was bitterly cold. Often, too, the ships could find no place in which to anchor, so deep were the **channels**<sup>37</sup> through which they passed. Wild storms burst suddenly on them, and drove them to left and right, and sometimes **forced** them to fall back before the **violence** of the gale.<sup>38</sup>

Before this, vessels had taken at least a month to make their way through the winding channels of the strait, but in less than half that time Drake had passed from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and early in September the brave **explorers**<sup>39</sup> were rewarded by seeing, rising up out of the **restless**<sup>40</sup> waters, the **cape**, which, as they knew, stood at the **outlet**<sup>41</sup> from the strait into the long-looked-for Pacific.

---

<sup>33</sup> Or: in front of them. <sup>34</sup> Not straight, turning, now to the left, now to the right. <sup>35</sup> It was so strong. <sup>36</sup> On the left and on the right, on both sides. <sup>37</sup> The passages between the rocks; *cp.* the English Channel (XVI. 4). <sup>38</sup> Or: made them sail back because the gale was so violent; *cp.* silent, silence; distant, distance; fragrant, fragrance. <sup>39</sup> *v.* to explore; *cp.* adventurer; beginner, bystander, commander, farmer, helper, hunter, miller, owner, passer-by, shoemaker, teacher, wagoner. <sup>40</sup> never resting; *s.* rest. *Cp.* careless, worthless. <sup>41</sup> A cape is a point of land. Look for Cape Horn on your map of South America. Outlet: the way out, *opp.* entrance.

The voyage along the western coast of South America was at first **calm**<sup>42</sup> and **rapid**.<sup>43</sup> Then a violent storm **overtook**<sup>44</sup> the little fleet, and it was driven **southward**<sup>45</sup> again. A second storm was even more violent. The ships were dashed from side to side, and lost sight of each other. **Masts**<sup>46</sup> were torn from the decks, and the sails were torn to pieces.

At length Drake found himself, in the "Golden Hind,"<sup>47</sup> back at the entrance to the Strait of Magellan. Even he now began to think that there was some truth in the general **belief**<sup>48</sup> that it was impossible safely to cross the Pacific.

As none of the missing vessels returned, Drake had to believe that they had either been **wrecked**<sup>49</sup> or had **deserted**<sup>50</sup> him. So, alone, "Golden Hind" proceeded on her voyage.

Drake at last reached the islands in the **extreme south**<sup>51</sup> of South America. Here he anchored in a deep

---

<sup>42</sup> *opp.* stormy. <sup>43</sup> *opp.* slow. <sup>44</sup> Came from behind and caught them. A man starts on a journey before another, but the latter travels more quickly and so overtakes him. <sup>45</sup> Cp. homeward (VIII. 20).<sup>46</sup> The sails hung from the masts. Small sailing-vessels have one mast, larger ones have two or three. <sup>47</sup> This was the name of his ship. <sup>48</sup> *v.* to believe. It was the general belief: all people thought so. <sup>49</sup> When a ship is disabled, it is a wreck. Drake thought some of the ships had been lost. <sup>50</sup> Or: left him, because the crews did not want to stay with him. <sup>51</sup> Or: the very south, the last point of South America.

basin,<sup>52</sup> sheltered by high cliffs.<sup>53</sup> **Landing**<sup>54</sup> on one of the islands, Drake and his crew rested for a time.

As soon as he had recovered from the voyage, Drake started to explore the island. He therefore made his way alone to the **southernmost**<sup>55</sup> cliff, where he threw himself at full length on its highest point, and stretched his arms and body out over the waters as far as he safely could.

When he returned to the "Golden Hind" one of his officers asked him —

"Captain, where have you been?"

Drake replied with a proud smile, "I have been **farther**<sup>56</sup> south than any man living. I have stood on the southernmost point of land in the world!"

He had indeed stood on the very end of Cape Horn, the most southerly<sup>55</sup> point of South America. Before him stretched the Antarctic Ocean,<sup>57</sup> the waters of which flow round the South Pole.

<sup>52</sup> We wash our hands with water in a basin. Here the basin is a small haven. <sup>53</sup> There were high cliffs that kept off strong winds, so that the water there was calm. When it rains very much, we stand under a tree; the tree shelters us from the rain, it is our **shelter**. <sup>54</sup> Leaving the ship, and going on to the land. <sup>55</sup> The cliff that was more to the south than any other, the most **southerly** cliff. <sup>56</sup> Comparative of far. <sup>57</sup> *opp.* the Arctic Ocean, in the north.

## XVIII. The Sea King of Devon (3).

We cannot follow Drake through all his adventures on the western **shores**<sup>1</sup> of America, where he won great wealth by attacking Spanish ships. Sailing to the north, he **expected** to find<sup>2</sup> a passage between America and Asia, by which he would be able to return to Europe, but to his surprise he again came in sight of the American **Continent**.<sup>3</sup>

After some time, spent in searching for a harbour, the "Golden Hind" was at length anchored in a place of safety. No sooner had this been done, than a number of Indians came towards them in their small boats. These natives were very friendly, though they had never before seen a white man.

Finding that his vessel had sprung a **leak**,<sup>4</sup> Drake brought the "Golden Hind" into **shallow** water,<sup>5</sup> **tents**<sup>6</sup> were built on the shore, and the cargo and provisions were safely landed. Then all hands<sup>7</sup> set to work<sup>8</sup> to **repair**<sup>9</sup> the **damaged**<sup>10</sup> ship.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: coast. When we land from a boat we step on shore. <sup>2</sup> Or: hoped to find, thought he would find. <sup>3</sup> The continent or **mainland**. Take your map and point the continent of America, passing your finger along the coast. Then do the same for the continent of Africa. <sup>4</sup> There was a hole in the ship, by which water could enter. <sup>5</sup> *opp.* deep water. <sup>6</sup> Soldiers sometimes sleep in tents, which can be put up and taken down quickly. <sup>7</sup> Or: all the sailors. <sup>8</sup> They began to work. <sup>9</sup> To make good. <sup>10</sup> When a ship springs a leak, or loses a mast, it is damaged.

Before leaving this part of North America, Drake took **possession** of it in Queen Elizabeth's name.<sup>11</sup> A large **brass plate**<sup>12</sup> was securely **nailed**<sup>13</sup> to a high **stout**<sup>14</sup> **post**.<sup>15</sup> On this plate was **engraved**<sup>16</sup> the Queen's name, the date, and a **statement** that<sup>17</sup> the country belonged to England.

When all was ready Drake now determined to cross the Pacific. After calling at<sup>18</sup> the great island of Java, at the south of Asia, Drake made<sup>19</sup> straight across the Indian Ocean for the Cape of Good Hope, which he reached in June 1580, having touched<sup>20</sup> at no place, and met with no **mishap**<sup>21</sup> on the way.

Without stopping on the South African coast, Drake sailed **nothward**,<sup>22</sup> and after touching on the West Coast, and calling at the Canary Islands, he made his way across the Bay of Biscay, and in a short time the great chalk cliffs of England appeared in sight. It was in September, 1580, that the "Golden

---

<sup>11</sup> He declared that Queen Elizabeth possessed (X. 41) it, that it belonged to her. <sup>12</sup> A smooth piece of brass (a bright metal). <sup>13</sup> Fastened with nails. <sup>14</sup> Thick, strong, *opp.* slender. A stout old man, a slender lad. <sup>15</sup> A long, round piece of wood; perhaps it was made of the trunk of a small tree, from which the branches had been cut off. <sup>16</sup> We write on paper, but engrave on metal. <sup>17</sup> Words declaring (or stating) that. <sup>18</sup> Stopping at, landing on. <sup>19</sup> Or: sailed. <sup>20</sup> Or: landed. <sup>21</sup> Or: **misfortune** (*a.* unfortunate), bad luck. <sup>22</sup> Cp. southward (XVII. 45).

Hind," after a voyage **lasting**<sup>23</sup> nearly three years, entered Plymouth Harbour.

Drake was now the most famous of living English sailors. The tale of his daring deeds, and of his **discoveries**,<sup>24</sup> **thrilled**<sup>25</sup> the heart of a people proud of their **seamanship**.<sup>26</sup> He had been the first Englishman to sail round the world.

It was no wonder that **noisy**<sup>27</sup> **crowds**<sup>28</sup> welcomed him with cheers and **greetings**,<sup>29</sup> as he at last set foot on English **soil**.<sup>30</sup> Cannons were **fired** from all the ships in the harbour, and many flags floated on their mast heads.<sup>31</sup> The weather-beaten crew went quickly to their homes, and Drake once more greeted his family and friends.

Queen Elizabeth welcomed Drake with warm words of **praise**, and listened with deep interest to the story of his adventures. A few months later, the Queen paid him a visit on board his vessel, the "Golden Hind," which was lying in the Thames. At the **feast**,<sup>32</sup> which took place on board the ship, Drake sat by Elizabeth's side.

When the feast was over, the Queen turned to Drake, and said —

<sup>23</sup> It was a voyage of nearly three years. <sup>24</sup> What he had discovered. <sup>25</sup> It excited them, made their hearts beat faster. <sup>26</sup> Their knowledge of a seaman's work, their skill (*a.* skilful) as sailors. <sup>27</sup> *s.* noise. <sup>28</sup> A crowd is a great number of people, standing close together. <sup>29</sup> *v.* to greet (XV. 19). <sup>30</sup> earth, land. <sup>31</sup> The top of the mast is called the mast head. <sup>32</sup> A grand dinner.

"Francis Drake, we **entrusted**<sup>33</sup> a sword to thy<sup>34</sup> keeping till we demanded it of thee again. We now command thee to deliver<sup>35</sup> it up, in the manner in which thou didst receive it."

Drake, **unbuckling**<sup>35</sup> the sword, **knelt**<sup>36</sup> before the Queen, and placed it in her hands. Elizabeth slowly drew the sword from its scabbard,<sup>35</sup> and said—

This sword, Drake, might still serve thee, though thou hast carried it round the globe, but before we return it to thee, it must render<sup>37</sup> us a service."

She lightly tapped Drake's shoulder with the sword,<sup>38</sup> and said, "Rise, Sir Francis Drake."

Queen Elizabeth ordered that the good ship should be carefully kept as a **relic**<sup>39</sup> of Drake's wonderful voyage. When, after the passage of years,<sup>40</sup> the ship went to wreck,<sup>41</sup> and was broken up, from her soundest

<sup>33</sup> The Queen had given him the sword to keep, hoping (**trusting**) that he would take good care of it. She now commanded him to give it up, to **deliver** it into her hands.

<sup>34</sup> Your; cp. thou and thee. (XVII. 14). <sup>35</sup> When the sword is not being used, it remains in the **scabbard**, which is fastened to a **belt** that is worn round the body. The belt is **buckled** on and unbuckled. <sup>36</sup> He went down on one **knee** or on both. I kneel, I have knelt. <sup>37</sup> Or: do. <sup>38</sup> This is still the way in which the King makes a knight. <sup>39</sup> We keep a relic, not because it is useful, but to remind us of something great or wonderful. <sup>40</sup> Or: after many years. <sup>41</sup> It became very old and damaged.



“SIR“ FRANCIS DRAKE.

**plank**<sup>42</sup> a chair was made, which may still be seen at Oxford.

Long afterwards, a **poet**<sup>43</sup> wrote these lines on the "Golden Hind:" —

"The stars above shall make thee known,  
If man were silent here;  
The sun himself cannot forget  
His fellow-traveller."<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>42</sup> A long piece of wood. The floor of a room is made of planks. <sup>43</sup> A poet is one who writes poems. <sup>44</sup> Drake, like the sun, had gone all round the earth.

## XIX. The Sea King of Devon (4).

About five years after Drake had made his great voyage round the world, he again crossed the Atlantic Ocean, and attacked the Spaniards in the West Indies. From this voyage he brought home a large number of cannons and much wealth, that he had taken from the Spaniards.

When he reached England, he found the people very much excited, for **news** had come<sup>1</sup> that the King of Spain was getting ready a great fleet with which to **invade**<sup>2</sup> this country. His object was to **punish**<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: they had been told. A **newspaper** contains the news, tells us what things have happened. <sup>2</sup> The enemy sends a fleet or an army to invade a country. The Spaniards wanted to invade England; they were **invaders**. <sup>3</sup> He wanted to make England suffer. A boy who is careless in his work is **punished** by the teacher.

England for helping his enemies, and at the same time to **destroy** her **power** at sea for ever.<sup>4</sup>

The merchants of London had **fitted** out<sup>5</sup> a small fleet of six vessels, to which Elizabeth had added four ships. Drake was placed in command of this little fleet, and at the head of the ten sturdy vessels he set out to **harass**<sup>6</sup> the Spaniards and **hinder**<sup>7</sup> them as much as possible.

The Spaniards did not expect such a **visitor**,<sup>8</sup> when Drake appeared in their most important harbour, and bravely led his fleet straight in among the Spanish ships. Right and left he fiercely attacked the surprised vessels, and after burning or sinking thirty-three of their number, he made his way out again **unharméd**.<sup>9</sup>

On his way home, he **captured**<sup>10</sup> a large treasure ship, the richest he had ever taken, and this partly paid for the money spent in fitting out the fleet with which he had done so much harm. On his return, Drake was welcomed with fresh honours, and everywhere

<sup>4</sup> To take away her strength in ships, to make England weak at sea. We destroy a piece of paper by burning it. England is **powerful** at sea; Spain did not succeed in rendering her **powerless**. <sup>5</sup> Or: got ready. Fit, fitted; cp. cut, cutting; hit, hitting; hot, hotter; let, letting; pat, patted; put, putting; set, setting; wet wetted. <sup>6</sup> to give trouble to. <sup>7</sup> To get in their way, to delay them. Our voyage was hindered by a fog. <sup>8</sup> *v.* to visit. Are you expecting any visitors this afternoon? Visit, visitor; cp. sail, sailor. <sup>9</sup> without being harmed; none of his ships were disabled by the Spaniards. Cp. unknown. <sup>10</sup> Or: took.

he proudly boasted that he had "**singed**<sup>11</sup> the Spanish King's beard."

One day in the following year, a number of naval officers were busy playing a game of **bowls**<sup>12</sup> on Plymouth Hoe, near the spot where Drake's statue now stands. Among those present were Lord Howard, who was at this time Lord High Admiral of England, Sir Francis Drake, Sir Walter Raleigh, and many other famous sailors.

Just when the game was at its height,<sup>13</sup> a man came running towards the **players**.<sup>14</sup> When he reached the spot, he was so **breathless**,<sup>15</sup> that at first he could scarcely speak. Seeing that he had brought important news, the players stopped, and stood round him, waiting for what he had to tell them.

"The Spanish fleet," he cried, "is even now off the Cornish coast.<sup>16</sup> I have just come from there in my vessel, and saw them plainly, flags flying,<sup>17</sup> with my own eyes."

At this news, Lord Howard, and others of the party, began to hurry towards the harbour, eager to put to sea<sup>18</sup> at once, but Drake called on them<sup>19</sup> to

---

<sup>11</sup> If hair is brought near a fire, it is singed. <sup>12</sup> A game played with wooden balls, on grass. <sup>13</sup> Or: when they were in the middle of the game. <sup>14</sup> *v.* to play. <sup>15</sup> Or: out of **breath**, because he had been running so fast. We **breath** through the nose, and sometimes through the mouth. <sup>16</sup> Or: the coast of Cornwall, a county in the south of England. <sup>17</sup> He had seen the Spanish flags. <sup>18</sup> Or: to set sail. <sup>19</sup> Or: asked them.

stop. "No, no!" he said, "there is plenty of time to finish the game and to beat the Spaniards too."

It was at four o'clock on the afternoon of July 19th, 1588, that the news of the coming of the Spanish Armada<sup>20</sup> reached the captains on the *Hoe*. On the following day, the English fleet was ready to sail, but Howard allowed the Armada to pass Plymouth before he gave the order for the **attack**.<sup>21</sup> This did not take place until the following day.

Drake's clever seamanship and **fearless**<sup>22</sup> **courage**<sup>23</sup> covered him with fresh **glory**.<sup>24</sup> Wherever he appeared, he struck terror into<sup>25</sup> the hearts of the invaders.<sup>2</sup> The English soldiers and sailors fought like lions, while the **luckless**<sup>26</sup> Spaniards seemed to feel the **shadow**<sup>27</sup> of the coming **defeat**.<sup>28</sup>

When at length the English sent **fire-ships**<sup>29</sup> among the enemy's fleet, the Spaniards were struck with terror, as one mighty vessel after another became a mass<sup>30</sup> of roaring **flame**.<sup>31</sup> Drake was quick to

<sup>20</sup> So the Spanish fleet was called. <sup>21</sup> *v.* to attack. <sup>22</sup> *Cp.* careless, powerless, restless, worthless. <sup>23</sup> *Or:* bravery. Nothing daunted his sturdy spirit. <sup>24</sup> *Or:* fame. He had gained great fame before; now he gained still more. <sup>25</sup> *Or:* terrified. <sup>26</sup> *Or:* unfortunate; *opp.* lucky. They had bad luck. <sup>27</sup> The shadow (*cp.* shade) is sometimes seen before the thing itself. <sup>28</sup> *opp.* victory. They felt that they were going to be **defeated**. <sup>29</sup> There were no sailors on these ships, but they were filled with things that burnt fiercely. <sup>30</sup> A mass is something very large. A mass of rock. <sup>31</sup> The flame of a lamp gives us light. When we strike a match, there is a flame. When a fire is fierce,<sup>4</sup> we can hear the flames, they roar.

seize the chance;<sup>32</sup> he **boarded**<sup>33</sup> and carried off twelve of the great ships. This was the last, as it was the most **heroic**,<sup>34</sup> deed which attended the great victory<sup>35</sup> of the English over the Spanish Armada.

Of the one hundred and thirty-two ships which had sailed from Spain, only about fifty returned, and these were more or less in bad condition. When the King of Spain heard the bad news, he was not willing to give England the **credit**<sup>36</sup> of having beaten his great fleet. "I did not send them to fight against wind and waves," he said.

Queen Elizabeth went to St Paul's Cathedral,<sup>37</sup> to offer up **thanks**<sup>38</sup> for the great victory. She also **caused**<sup>39</sup> a **medal**<sup>40</sup> to be struck, bearing these words—

"God blew with His winds, and they were **scattered**."<sup>41</sup>

<sup>32</sup> He did not miss the chance, but seized it quickly. <sup>33</sup> He boarded the ship: he brought his own ship close to it, so that his sailors could get on board. <sup>34</sup> Drake was a **hero**, a very brave man, and he did many heroic deeds. <sup>35</sup> Which was done at the time of this victory. <sup>36</sup> Or: honour. <sup>37</sup> A great church in London. <sup>38</sup> Thanks (to God); *v.* to thank. <sup>39</sup> *s.* cause (IX. 27); she had it made. <sup>40</sup> A piece of metal, generally round, with words in memory of a great man, a great victory, etc. <sup>41</sup> Driven in all directions. In autumn the wind scatters the dry leaves.

## XX. The Sea King of Devon (5).

About seven years after this great victory—in 1595—Drake and Hawkins, at the head of a large fleet, sailed from Plymouth, again to attack the Spaniards in

America and the West Indies. The Atlantic was crossed in a month, and soon afterwards Hawkins fell ill<sup>1</sup> and died.

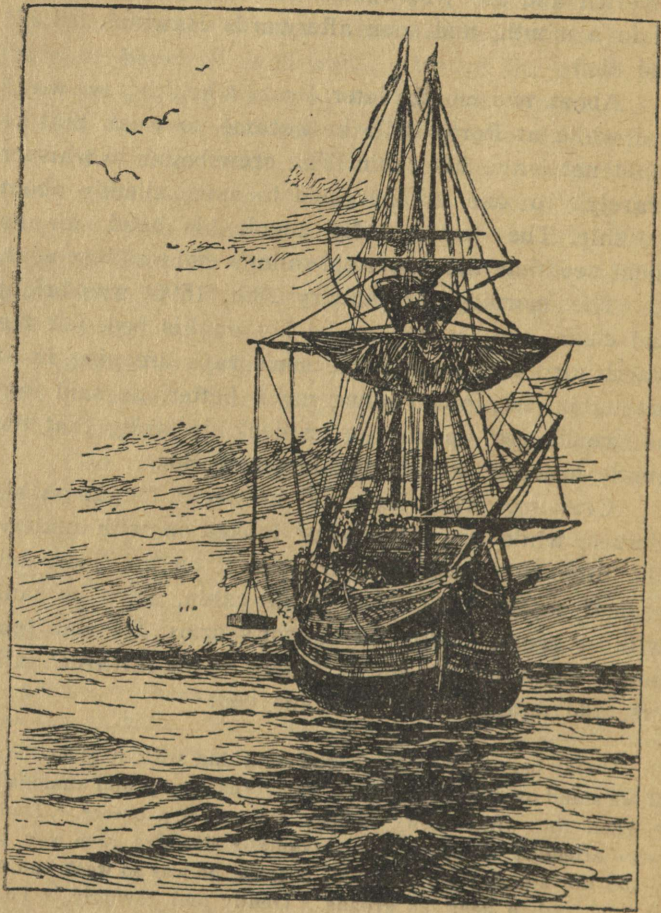
About two months later, Drake's health gave way,<sup>2</sup> and while at Porto Bello he became so weak that he could not leave his cabin. The crew began to whisper **gravely**<sup>3</sup> to one another, and to move silently about the ship. The doctor sadly shook his head, for he could see that the brave old sailor's end was very near.

The morning of January 28th, 1596, was bright and clear, and Drake, as he lay on his bed, felt the warm air, and watched the sun's rays creeping in at his cabin window. Feeling much better, he said that he would get up and go on deck, declaring that the gentle **breezes**<sup>4</sup> would give him new life.

Crawling from his bed, he began to put on his clothes, while his **attendants**<sup>5</sup> looked on with anxiety. He lifted his coat, then dropped it on the floor, and **reeled**<sup>6</sup> against the side of the cabin. Then he sank with a **groan**<sup>7</sup> [into the doctor's arms. He was **tenderly**<sup>8</sup> lifted by the sturdy hands of his **faithful**<sup>9</sup> sailors, and again stretched on his bed.

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: became ill. <sup>2</sup> If we lean on a thin stick, it gives way. If we stand on thin ice, it gives way. <sup>3</sup> earnestly and anxiously. <sup>4</sup> When the wind blows lightly, we call it a breeze. <sup>5</sup> Those who attended on him, his servants. <sup>6</sup> His legs gave way, he could not stand. <sup>7</sup> He **groaned**, because he was so weak and ill. It was sad to hear his groans. <sup>8</sup> Gently and lovingly. <sup>9</sup> They loved him well and were ready to do anything for him. He could trust them.



BURIAL OF DRAKE.

For nearly an hour, his companions breathlessly watched over their dying chief. Once Drake's eyes opened, and, looking around, he **feebly**<sup>10</sup> lifted his hand, as if about to speak,<sup>11</sup> but the hand fell in silence, and in a few minutes Sir Francis Drake was dead. All that day there was nothing but mourning on board the ships. The officers felt that the best grave for the old Sea King was beneath the waters of the mighty **deep**,<sup>12</sup> on which he had won his **world-wide** fame.<sup>13</sup> Drake's body was therefore placed in a **leaden coffin**,<sup>14</sup> and laid on the deck of the flag-ship. On the following day the vessel slowly floated some three miles from the shore, where the **funeral** took place.<sup>15</sup> A **volley** was fired ;<sup>16</sup> the guns of the battleships replied, and the coffin was slowly **swung**<sup>17</sup> off the vessel's side.

In another moment<sup>18</sup> the company heard the heavy **splash**,<sup>18</sup> which told them that the **mortal remains**<sup>19</sup> of the hero were seeking their last resting-place in the great deep.

---

<sup>10</sup> He was very feeble, weak. He had no strength left. <sup>11</sup> Or : as if he were going to speak. <sup>12</sup> The sea. <sup>13</sup> He had become famous in the whole world. <sup>14</sup> When a man dies on land, his body is placed in a wooden coffin and this is **buried** in the earth or burnt. Drake was buried at sea, in a coffin of **lead** (a very heavy metal). <sup>15</sup> Where Drake was buried. <sup>16</sup> A number of sailors fired their guns at the same time. <sup>17</sup> Tie a piece of string round a stone and hold it by the string. If you knock the stone, it swings from side to side. A strong wind makes the branches swing. <sup>18</sup> If a stone is thrown into a pond, the water **splashes** up, there is a splash. <sup>19</sup> What **remains** after death, and perishes ; not the spirit that cannot die, but is **immortal**.

"The waves became his **winding-sheet**,<sup>20</sup>  
 The waters were his **tomb**;<sup>21</sup>  
 But for his fame the ocean sea  
 Was not **sufficient**<sup>22</sup> room."

Among the famous Englishmen whose names are written in **history**<sup>23</sup> Sir Francis Drake is one of the **foremost**.<sup>24</sup> In an **age**<sup>25</sup> of adventure he **outstripped** the fame of the great admirals<sup>26</sup> who had carried England's glory and power to a high **pitch**.<sup>27</sup>

He was a perfect master of seamanship. He was as **familiar**<sup>28</sup> with the duties of a **common**<sup>29</sup> sailor as with those of an admiral in command of the fleet. As brave as a lion, he **shrank** before no **obstacle**,<sup>30</sup> however great, and was not **cast down**<sup>31</sup> by any defeat,

<sup>20</sup> We sleep in bed between sheets. After death a sheet used to be wound round the body; this is a winding-sheet.  
<sup>21</sup> Great men are buried beneath a tomb. <sup>22</sup> Or: enough.  
<sup>23</sup> Who are famous in the history of England (the story of the growth of England). <sup>24</sup> Right in front, at the head; cp. southernmost (XVII. 55). <sup>25</sup> A time, one hundred years or more. <sup>26</sup> He obtained greater fame. Of two horses the one that runs quicker outstrips the other. <sup>27</sup> Or: point. They had made their country extremely (very) powerful. <sup>28</sup> He knew the duties of a common sailor well. I am familiar with this book. I have read it and know what it contains. <sup>29</sup> ordinary; not a mate or captain. <sup>30</sup> He was not afraid of anything in his way, not daunted by any danger or difficulty. He never shrinks from danger; they have not shrunk from it. If the wind has blown a tree across the road, that is an obstacle. <sup>31</sup> Made sad. When defeated, he did not lose heart.

however **crushing**.<sup>32</sup> Above all, he was a **patriot**<sup>33</sup> from first to last, **devoted**<sup>34</sup> to his Queen and country. That is why Englishmen of to-day are proud of Drake, and have set up the statue on Plymouth Hoe, which will keep his memory green<sup>35</sup> through ages yet to come.<sup>36</sup>

---

<sup>32</sup> We can crush a nut with a stone, or by biting on it. He was crushed by his defeat; it took away all his strength. A defeat that would have crushed other men did not crush Drake. <sup>33</sup> one who loves his country; *a. patriotic, s. patriotism.* <sup>34</sup> faithful, ready to give even his life. How much time do you devote (give) to English? <sup>35</sup> Or: fresh. <sup>36</sup> Or: through all future ages.

## XXI. The Red Cord of Courage.

In all her wars, Britain has never had more **stubborn** enemies<sup>1</sup> to fight than the Hillsmen<sup>2</sup> of India. Their attack is always **swift**<sup>3</sup> and sudden. They seldom fight in the **open**,<sup>4</sup> but, like the American Indians, lie in **ambush**<sup>5</sup> and fight from **cover**<sup>6</sup>. Their homes are far in the **interior**,<sup>7</sup> hidden among the hills, and can be reached only by a few well-covered and

---

<sup>1</sup> enemies who keep on fighting, who will not say: "We are beaten." <sup>2</sup> natives of the **hilly** country in the north of India (in Asia). The West Indies (see XIX. 1) are in America. <sup>3</sup> They always attack quickly. <sup>4</sup> in the open (country), in the plains. <sup>5</sup> they wait for their enemies, hiding behind trees, rocks, etc. <sup>6</sup> something which covers or hides them. <sup>7</sup> the parts of the country that are far from the coast.

well-guarded **passes**.<sup>8</sup> They are brave and **reckless**,<sup>9</sup> and admire courage more than any other **virtue**.<sup>10</sup>

These hillsmen have a strange **custom**<sup>11</sup> of showing respect for their dead chiefs. After a battle, they tie around the **wrists**<sup>12</sup> of their bravest **warriors**<sup>13</sup> who have fallen in the fight, a green or a red **cord**.<sup>14</sup> The red cord is the highest tribute they can pay<sup>15</sup> to the bravery of a dead hero.

A small body of British **troops**<sup>16</sup> was once sent into the hills against a **tribe**<sup>17</sup> that had been making<sup>18</sup> much trouble. Their way led them through a long **valley**<sup>19</sup> with high hills on either side.<sup>20</sup> From these hills the enemy harrassed them, so they marched on quickly, hoping to reach an open **space**<sup>21</sup> before long.

On their way they came to a large mass of rock. The **main** body of the troops<sup>22</sup> kept to one side; but

<sup>8</sup> A pass is a narrow passage through mountains. <sup>9</sup> They do not heed dangers, they have no fear; *opp.* cautious (see VII. 4).  
<sup>10</sup> Courage, **modesty** (see I. 7), **loyalty** (see XIV. 13) are virtues.  
<sup>11</sup> a curious way. Their custom is to fight from cover; they generally do so. <sup>12</sup> The wrist is where the hand joins the arm.  
<sup>13</sup> Or: soldiers. <sup>14</sup> A stout (or thick) string, not as thick as a rope (see V. 2). <sup>15</sup> Or: the highest (greatest) honour they can show. <sup>16</sup> Or: a small number (or band) of British soldiers.  
<sup>17</sup> A number of natives, under a chief; much smaller than a nation. <sup>18</sup> Or: giving, causing. They were very troublesome.  
<sup>19</sup> Or: dale (see VIII. 47). <sup>20</sup> Or: on both sides. <sup>21</sup> Or: open country, a place far from hills, a part of the land that was flat (not hilly). <sup>22</sup> Or: most of the troops, the greater part of them.  
 Cp. mainland (XVIII. 3). A main road is an important road.

a **sergeant**<sup>23</sup> and eleven men, thinking it was only a huge **boulder**<sup>24</sup> in the way, went around the other side, expecting to meet the others when they had passed the rock. They soon found, however, that they had left the main valley and were in a narrow ravine entirely shut in by high hills, with no outlet but the one by which they had entered.

On top of a **steep**<sup>25</sup> mountain just in front of them was a flat<sup>21</sup> space, **defended**<sup>26</sup> by a strong **breastwork** of tree trunks,<sup>27</sup> behind which were hidden seventy Hillsmen. From behind this breastwork the enemy sent down a heavy fire.

The officer in command of the troops signalled the little party to **retreat**.<sup>28</sup> By some mistake, they understood the signal to mean "**Charge!**"<sup>29</sup>

Without a moment's **hesitation**,<sup>30</sup> the small band of heroes answered the **mistaken**<sup>29</sup> order with a cheer, and charged the heights.

Think of it—twelve **unsupported**<sup>31</sup> men charging seventy defended by cliffs and a strong breastwork! Up, up, up, they **toiled**,<sup>32</sup> and six reached the very

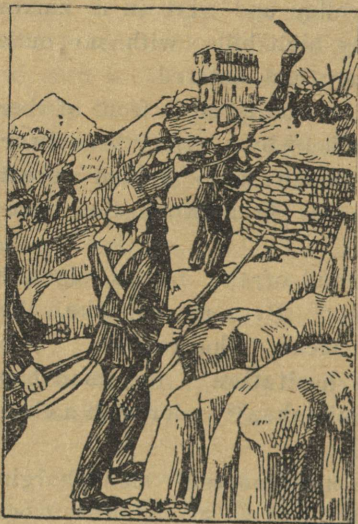
<sup>23</sup> There are four sergeants to a company of soldiers. <sup>24</sup> A small rock, standing alone. <sup>25</sup> It is hard to climb up a steep rock.

<sup>26</sup> Or: guarded. <sup>27</sup> Tree trunks had been placed in front, so that the Hillsmen could hide behind them. This was an ambush.

<sup>28</sup> Or: to go back. <sup>29</sup> Or: they thought that the signal meant: "Attack!" They made a mistake; they were **mistaken**.

<sup>30</sup> Without waiting for an instant, showing no sign of fear. They did not **hesitate**. <sup>31</sup> Unassisted, with none to **support** (help) them. <sup>32</sup> Or: went (climbed) with great trouble *s. toil*, very hard work.

top! Then followed a hand-to-hand **struggle**,<sup>33</sup> which lasted until the last of the little band lay dead; but — every British life cost two lives of the Hillsmen.



When the main body of the troops reached the place, they found the bodies of their dead **comrades**<sup>34</sup> at the foot of the rock from which they had been thrown by their savage enemies. They were covered with terrible **wounds**,<sup>35</sup> and crushed; but round both wrists of every British hero was tied the red cord of courage.

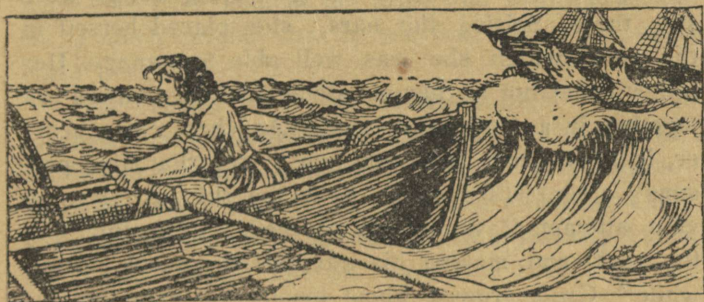
Even the wild Hillsmen had admired the bravery of the **handful**<sup>36</sup> of their enemy and had paid them the highest tribute they could pay.

---

<sup>33</sup> a fight, not at a distance, but man against man. The British soldiers **struggled** with the Hillsmen. <sup>34</sup> Or companions, friends. <sup>35</sup> The Hillsmen shot and **wounded** them. A man who is seriously wounded, sometimes dies; or he takes a long time to get well again. <sup>36</sup> A handful of men: a small number, a little band.

## XXII. Grace Darling.

Off the coast of Northumberland, in the north-east of England, are the Farne Islands, a number of dangerous rocks, on which there are **lighthouses**.<sup>1</sup> The **keeper**<sup>2</sup> of these was Mr Darling, with whom lived his daughter Grace.



Towards the morning of the 6th of September 1838, Grace was awaked by cries of distress ; and at **daybreak**<sup>3</sup> she saw the remains of a wreck on Longstone Island, the **outermost**<sup>4</sup> of the rocks.

<sup>1</sup> Where the coast is dangerous, a lighthouse is built, as a warning to ships at night. It is high and has a very powerful light, which can be seen from a great distance. <sup>2</sup> *v.* to keep.

<sup>3</sup> Or: at **dawn**, the beginning of day ; *opp.* **dusk**, when it grows dark, after the sun has set, when night begins to fall. <sup>4</sup> Farthest away from the coast ; *cp.* foremost (XX. 24), southernmost (XVII. 55).

Grace awaked her father with the words: "There is a wreck on Longstone Island. Let us get into the boat and go to the rescue<sup>5</sup> of anyone who may still be alive on the vessel." The tide, however, was rising,<sup>6</sup> and the sea and wind were wild; her father hesitated.<sup>7</sup>

Grace went to the window and looked again at the wreck. She was sure she could see something moving on the vessel, as though<sup>8</sup> living beings were still there. Seizing the oars,<sup>9</sup> she placed herself in the boat, which she was well able to manage. Her father could not let her go alone, and they rowed<sup>9</sup> off together in a very heavy sea.<sup>10</sup> As they came nearer, it gave them fresh courage to see that nine persons<sup>11</sup> were still holding on to the ship. After many vain attempts,<sup>12</sup> the father succeeded in landing<sup>13</sup> on the rock and making his way to<sup>14</sup> the wreck. Meanwhile<sup>15</sup> Grace rowed about among the great waves, skilfully managing her little boat; had she been less skilful,<sup>16</sup> it would have been dashed to pieces against the rocks.

---

<sup>5</sup> She wanted to save them from death, to rescue them.  
<sup>6</sup> The tide rises and falls twice in twenty-four hours. <sup>7</sup> He was not sure what he ought to do. <sup>8</sup> Or: as if. <sup>9</sup> She sat in the boat holding one oar in each hand; with these she rowed.  
<sup>10</sup> There were great waves. <sup>11</sup> Or: human beings. Cp. personal pronoun. <sup>12</sup> Or: after trying in vain many times, after failing again and again. <sup>13</sup> Or: managed to land. <sup>14</sup> Or: reaching.  
<sup>15</sup> Or: while he did so. <sup>16</sup> Or: if she had been less skilful, if she had shown less skill.

One by one,<sup>17</sup> with the greatest care, the nine who still lived were placed in the boat and carried to the lighthouse. There Grace made them as comfortable as she could and looked after them for two whole days before the storm became less violent and it was possible to send a boat to the mainland. One of the saved was a Mrs Dawson, whose two children, eleven and eight years old, had been killed by the waves while she held them in her arms, and who had suffered so much herself, that it was long before she could leave her bed.

The vessel was the "Forfarshire,"<sup>18</sup> a large steamer<sup>19</sup> sailing between Hull and Dundee. Her boilers<sup>19</sup> had begun to leak,<sup>20</sup> so that her engines<sup>21</sup> were useless.<sup>22</sup> When the storm arose,<sup>23</sup> the ship was unmanageable<sup>24</sup> without her steam,<sup>19</sup> and was driven helplessly<sup>25</sup> upon the Farne Islands. The only boat had been lowered<sup>26</sup>

<sup>17</sup> Or: one after the other. <sup>18</sup> The name of a county in Scotland. <sup>19</sup> Not a sailing vessel, but a steamship (one in which steam is used). It has boilers, which are filled with water; when the water is heated (*s.* heat, *a.* hot), it becomes steam. <sup>20</sup> They did not hold the water, but had holes (leaks, *cp.* XXIII. 4) through which it flowed out. <sup>21</sup> A steamer has engines (of metal); the men who look after these are called engineers. <sup>22</sup> Or: of no use; *opp.* useful. *Cp.* careless, fearless, powerless, worthless. <sup>23</sup> Or: began. To arise; *cp.* to rise. <sup>24</sup> Could not be managed; *opp.* manageable. The sailors could do nothing with the ship. <sup>25</sup> Without help, with no one to give assistance; *opp.* helpful. <sup>26</sup> Or: let down. The boat was lowered from the deck to the water.

by eight of the sailors, who were rowing off, when one gentleman rushed on deck, seized a rope, and swung himself in after them. These nine were picked up by a vessel and saved. Of the others, the whole number had either been drowned in their cabins or washed off the wreck, except four of the crew and five **passengers**<sup>27</sup> whom Grace Darling's courage had rescued.<sup>5</sup> It was not known how many lives were lost; more than forty had certainly gone on board at Hull.

Do you wonder that the name of Grace Darling has become famous in England?

---

<sup>27</sup> People who had intended to go by boat to Dundee; the other people on board were the captain and the crew.

---

## EASY READING.

### XXIII. Fables.

#### A. THE FOX AND THE CROW.

A Crow had the good fortune to find a large piece of cheese. She flew on to the branch of a tree, holding it in her beak. Just then a Fox came along and caught sight of the Crow. "I should like that piece of cheese," he said to himself; "but how can I get it? I cannot climb the tree." After thinking for a little while, he said to the Crow: "Oh, what a beautiful bird you are! I am sure I have never seen such beautiful feathers! If your voice is as sweet as your appearance is lovely, you ought to be the Queen of the Birds." The crow was delighted to hear the Fox speak of her like this, and wanted to show him that her voice was no less beautiful than her feathers. So she cawed; but as she opened her beak, the cheese of course fell down. The Fox jumped upon it in an instant; and as he ran away with it, he called out: "Your voice is beautiful, Miss Crow; but you are not very clever."



## B. THE CROW AND THE JUG.

A thirsty Crow found a jug with some water in it; but there was so little that all her attempts to reach it were vain. It seemed as though she would die of thirst, although water was so near. At last the Crow had a happy thought. She began dropping little stones into the jug, and with each stone the water rose a little higher. At last it was so high that it came to the very **brim**<sup>1</sup> and the clever Crow could reach it with her beak and satisfy her thirst.

---

<sup>1</sup> The edge of the top of the jug.

## C. THE DOG, THE COCK, AND THE FOX.

A Dog and a Cock became great friends, and agreed to travel together. At dusk the Cock flew upon the branch of a large tree, and the Dog lay down inside it, for it was hollow. Next morning the Cock crowed, as was his habit. A Fox heard his "Cock-a-doodle-do!" and thought: "Ah, that is going to be my breakfast." He soon discovered the Cock, and invited him to come down, as he had something important to tell him. The Cock replied: "With pleasure; would you kindly wake my porter who sleeps at the foot of the tree? He'll open the door and let you in." So the Fox knocked on the trunk: out rushed the Dog and tore the Fox to pieces.

## D. THE LION THE FOX, AND THE ASS.

A Lion, a Fox, and an Ass<sup>1</sup> went out hunting together. Before long they had killed quite a large number of animals, and determined to have a meal. The Lion turned to the Ass, saying: "**Divide**<sup>2</sup> the animals between us." The Ass divided it all into three **equal**<sup>2</sup> parts and modestly begged the Lion and the Fox to choose the share that pleased them best. This made the Lion very angry; he jumped upon the Ass and tore it to pieces. He then asked the Fox to make the **division**.<sup>2</sup> The Fox made a great heap for the Lion, leaving only a tiny share for himself. "My dear friend," said the Lion, "who taught you to divide so cleverly?" The Fox replied: "I took a lesson from the Ass."

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: donkey. <sup>2</sup> Eight divided by two is (or equals) four ( $8:2=4$ ); *s.* division; *opp.* to **multiply**, *s.* **multiplication**. Two multiplied by four equals eight ( $2\times 4=8$ ). If we divide a heap of 12 apples into 3 equal parts, there will be 4 apples in each part; but if there are 5 in one part, 4 in the second, and 3 in the third, then the parts are unequal.

## XXIV. The Parrot.

A man once owned a fine green **parrot**<sup>1</sup>. He taught the bird to say, "No doubt about it."<sup>2</sup>

One night the man buried some money in different places in the village. Next morning he went through

---

<sup>1</sup> The parrot is a bird that can talk. <sup>2</sup> (There is) no doubt about it, it is really so.

the village with his bird, saying: "My parrot is wise. He will show me where to dig for money."

Whenever he came to a place where he had buried some money, he said, "O wise parrot, if I dig here, shall I find any gold?"

The parrot always looked very wise, and said, "No doubt about it."

Then the man would dig up the money and show it to the people who stood around.

A young man, who had watched the parrot and his owner for some time, thought, "If I had that parrot, I should soon be rich."

So he said to the owner of the parrot, "For how much will you sell your parrot?"

"For one thousand pieces of gold."

"That is a great deal of money!" cried the young man.

"But my parrot is worth it; are you not, O wise one?" said the man.

"No doubt about it," answered the parrot.

This answer pleased the young man so much, that he paid the one thousand pieces of gold and walked off<sup>3</sup> with the parrot.

He at once took the parrot out to look for money. Many times he asked him, "If I dig here, shall I find some gold?"

Every time the parrot answered, "No doubt about it."

---

<sup>3</sup> Or: away.

But though he dug and dug, he never found a single gold piece.

At last he felt sure that the bird's owner had **cheated** him.<sup>4</sup>

"O wise bird," he said, "I think I was a fool to give a thousand pieces of gold for you."

The parrot looked very wise and answered, "No doubt about it."

The parrot looked so funny as he said this that the young man laughed and laughed.

"Well," he said at last, "you told the truth that time, O wise one. After this I shall work. That is the only way to become a rich man."

"No doubt about it," agreed the parrot,<sup>5</sup> and for the second time he told the truth.

---

<sup>4</sup> He had not spoken the truth about the parrot, had made him pay much money for what was worth little. <sup>5</sup> The parrot agreed with what the young man said, he had the same opinion.

## XXV. The Lion and the Hare.

Once upon a time there was a Lion, who used to eat up one of the animals of the forest every day. They had to come up one after another, when called for. At last it came to the **Hare's**<sup>1</sup> turn to be eaten, and he did not want to be eaten at all. He hesitated

---

<sup>1</sup> The hare has long ears and a short tail, and can run very swiftly. It is like a rabbit, but larger.

and he waited about, and when at last he had the courage to come, he was very late. The Lion, when he saw the Hare coming, ran towards him. The Hare said —

“Uncle Lion, I know I am late, and you have cause to be angry. But really it is not my **fault**.<sup>2</sup> There is another Lion in our part of the forest, and he says that he is master, and you are nobody. Indeed, when I showed him that I certainly would come to you, he was very angry.”

“Ha!” said the Lion, roaring; “who says he is my master? Show him to me. I’ll teach him who is master of the forest.”

“Come along then,” said the Hare.

They went a long way, until they came to a **well**.<sup>3</sup> The Hare looked down into the well. “He was here just now,” said he.

The Lion looked in, and at the **bottom**<sup>4</sup> he saw what looked like a Lion in the water. He shook his head—the other Lion shook his head. He roared—the echo of a roar came up from the bottom of the well. “Let me get at him!” roared the Lion. In he jumped—splash! Nothing more was ever heard of that Lion, and the animals of the forest were glad to be left in

---

<sup>2</sup> You must not blame me. It am not the cause of the delay. <sup>3</sup> We go to a well to fetch water. <sup>4</sup> The lowest part, where the water was.

peace.<sup>5</sup> They put their heads together,<sup>6</sup> and made this poem, which is always sung in that forest on Sundays : —

“The Hare is small, but by his wit<sup>7</sup>  
He now has got the best of it<sup>8</sup> ;  
By folly<sup>9</sup> down the Lion fell,  
And lost his life within<sup>10</sup> the well.”

---

<sup>5</sup> *Opp.* : war; in peace, at rest. <sup>6</sup> Or: they all thought hard (a great deal). <sup>7</sup> Or: cleverness. <sup>8</sup> The lion got the worst of it. <sup>9</sup> Or: through being foolish. <sup>10</sup> Or: inside.

## XXVI. The Foolish Wolf.

A Wolf and an Ass were great friends, and they spent most of their time playing at a game of their own. The game was easy enough to learn; you could play it yourselves; and it was this. First the Ass used to run away from the Wolf as hard as he could, and the Wolf used to follow; and then the Wolf would run as hard as he could from the Ass, and the Ass would follow.

One day, as the Wolf was running away from the Ass, a Boy saw them.

“Ha, ha, ha,” said the Boy, “what a coward<sup>1</sup> that Wolf is, to run away from an Ass.” He thought, you see, that the Wolf was afraid of being eaten by the Ass.

---

<sup>1</sup> One who is easily frightened, who has no courage, is a coward.

The Wolf heard him, and was very angry. He stopped short,<sup>2</sup> and said to the Boy —

“So you think I am a coward, little Boy? You shall suffer for what you have said. I’m brave enough to eat you, as you shall find out this very night; for I will come and carry you off from your home.”

If the Wolf was no coward, at least he was a foolish Wolf to tell the Boy if he meant to carry him off, as I think you will agree with me.

The Boy went home to tell his mother. “Mother,” said he, “a Wolf is coming to-night to carry me off.”

“Oh, never mind if he does,”<sup>3</sup> said the Boy’s mother, “he won’t hurt you.”

The Boy did not feel quite so sure about that, for he had seen sharp teeth in the mouth of the Wolf. So he chose out a big and sharp stone, and put it in his pocket. Why he did not hide, I can’t tell you, for he never told me; but my own opinion is, he was almost as foolish as the Wolf.

Well, when night came, the Boy’s mother went up to bed, and she was soon fast asleep, but the Boy was awake waiting for the Wolf. About ten o’clock came a **knock**<sup>4</sup> at the door.

“Come in,” said the boy.

The Wolf opened the door, and came in, and, says he, “Now, Boy, you must come along with me.”

---

<sup>2</sup> Or: suddenly. <sup>3</sup> Or: you need not mind if he does; or: what if he does? <sup>4</sup> Someone knocked.

"All right," says the Boy, "mother doesn't mind."

I have never been able to understand why his mother did not mind, but perhaps he was a very bad Boy, and she was glad to get rid of him. If he did nothing but pull his sisters' hair, and put spiders down their necks, he was just as well out of the house, I think.

So the Boy got on the Wolf's back, and the Wolf ran quickly to his den.<sup>5</sup> Then the Wolf thought to himself, "I have had my dinner, and I don't want any Boy to-night. What if I leave him for to-morrow, and go for a walk with my friends?"

So he left the Boy in his den, and off he went to find his friends.

What makes me think more than ever that he was a foolish Wolf, is that he never even tied the Boy's legs together. So when the Wolf was gone, the Boy went out of the den, and climbed up a tree.

In an hour or two back came the Wolf, ready for bed. He looked in at the mouth of the den, but no Boy.

"I wonder where that Boy has got to?" said he; "I left him here safe enough." It never entered this Wolf's head that legs can walk, and Boys can climb trees. He felt very anxious, and, as many people do when they are much in doubt, he opened his mouth wide.

The Boy saw him standing at the opening of the den, with his mouth wide open, so he pulled the sharp

---

<sup>5</sup> Wolves live in dens.

stone out of his pocket, and threw it in. This Boy was very clever in throwing stones, and the stone went straight into the Wolf's inside, and cut his inside so much that he died.

Then the Boy climbed down from the tree, and he was at home in time for breakfast. I don't know whether his mother was pleased to see him or not; but there he was, and there he stayed, and if he has not gone away, he is there still.

## XXVII. A Dog Story.

I am a dog, and my name is Brick. I think it is a very good name for a dog. It is not a common name like Spot, and Ned,<sup>1</sup> and Rover.

My mistress is a young lady called Kitty.<sup>2</sup> She is very fond of me. She has taught me how to do a great many things.

I can sit up on my hind legs. I can jump over Miss Kitty's hands, and I can dance. I was very proud when I heard her tell one of her friends that I could do everything she told me.

After that I tried more than ever to please her, and she often gave me nice bits to eat. Every day I went out with her, to take care of her.

---

<sup>1</sup> See X. 2. <sup>2</sup> Short for Katherine or Catherine; also Kate, Kathleen. Cp. Daisy or Maggie (=Margaret), Connie (=Constance), Bess (see I. 35) or Betty or Betsy (=Elizabeth), Molly (=Mary), Nelly (=Helen).

Now, one day, as we were out walking in the village, we saw a strange dog running along the street, with a crowd of children after him. A bad boy had tied a tin **can**<sup>3</sup> to the poor dog's tail, and the children were shouting and throwing stones at the dog and the can.

Just as we came in sight, the dog ran into a passage between two houses, and the children could not drive him out. Miss Kitty told them to go away and let the poor thing alone.

As soon as they were all gone, she spoke kindly to the dog and made friends with him. Then she **untied**<sup>4</sup> the string and took off the can. Nor was that all. She led the strange dog home, and let him eat with me out of my dish.

I did not like him at first, but what could I do? Miss Kitty was kind to him, and so, after a time, we became very good friends. My mistress did not know the new dog's name, so she gave him one. She called him **Tinker**,<sup>5</sup> because, when she first met him, he had a tin can tied to his tail.

And now I will tell you how Tinker paid Miss Kitty back, for all the kindness she had shown him. It is the best dog story that I know.

One night, when every one was in bed, and Tinker and I had gone to lie down under the table in the **hall**,<sup>6</sup> we heard a noise not far away.

---

<sup>3</sup> A can holds water, beer, etc.; it is generally made of such a metal as tin, brass, or copper. <sup>4</sup> *opp.* to tie. <sup>5</sup> When a can is broken, the tinker repairs (see XVIII. 9) it. <sup>6</sup> When we pass through the front door of a house, we enter the hall.

Tinker was on his feet in a moment. Then he made for<sup>7</sup> the **pantry**,<sup>8</sup> where a **scraping**<sup>9</sup> sound could be heard. Of course I went with him. I wanted to see what he would do.

When we got to the pantry, we could just make out<sup>10</sup> a man on the outside of the window. It was so dark that the man could not see us.

Tinker did not bark or make the least sound; he just waited. All the time the scraping sound went on.

The man scraped away till he could take out one of the window **panes**.<sup>11</sup> Then he put his hand through the hole to open the window.

Tinker was ready, and he at once jumped up and caught the man's hand in his mouth, and held it fast. Then I began to bark as loudly as I could.

Every one in the house woke up at once, and came as fast as they could to see what was wrong. My master got help, and the man was taken to prison. They all said that Tinker was a brave dog, and I think so too.

---

<sup>7</sup> Or: ran to. <sup>8</sup> A small room in which food is kept also glass and silver for the table. <sup>9</sup> We scrape our boots on a mat when we want to clean them after coming home. If we pass the edge of a knife over a piece of wood, it makes a scraping sound. <sup>10</sup> Or: see, perceive. <sup>11</sup> A window often has four or six panes of glass.

---

## POEMS.

### XXVIII. To a Cricket.

Voice of summer, **keen**<sup>1</sup> and **shrill**<sup>1</sup>,  
Chirping round my winter fire,  
Of thy song I never tire,  
**Weary**<sup>2</sup> others as they will,  
For thy song with summer's filled—  
Filled with sunshine, filled with June;  
**Firelight**<sup>3</sup> echo of that noon,  
Heard in fields when all is **stilled**<sup>4</sup>  
In the golden light of May,  
Bringing scents of **new-mown**<sup>5</sup> hay,  
Bees, and birds, and flowers away,  
**Prithee**,<sup>6</sup> **haunt**<sup>7</sup> my fireside<sup>3</sup> still,  
Voice of summer, keen and shrill.

WILLIAM BENNETT.

---

<sup>1</sup> Both words here mean high and loud; the cricket's voice is easily heard. <sup>2</sup> To weary, to become **weary** (tired). Even though others become tired. <sup>3</sup> In summer the cricket sings in the sunlight; in the winter it is often heard near the **fireplace**, by the **fireside**. <sup>4</sup> Or: has grown still, is silent. <sup>5</sup> When the grass is cut (or mown; to **mow**), we call it hay; **new-mown**, just mown. <sup>6</sup> Or: I pray (beg) thee. <sup>7</sup> Or: remain near.

## XXIX. Mister Fly.

What a sharp little fellow is Mister Fly,  
 He goes where he pleases, low or high,  
 And can walk just as well with his feet to the sky,  
     As I can on the floor ;  
     At the window he comes  
     With a **buzz**<sup>1</sup> and a roar,  
     And o'er the smooth glass  
     Can easily pass  
     Or through the **keyhole**<sup>2</sup> of the door.  
 He eats the sugar and goes away,  
 Nor ever once asks what there is to pay ;  
 And sometimes he crosses the **teapot's**<sup>3</sup> steam,  
 And comes and **plunges**<sup>4</sup> his head in the **cream** ;<sup>5</sup>  
 Then on the edge of the jug he stands,  
 And cleans his wings with his feet and hands.  
 This done,<sup>6</sup> through the window he hurries away,  
 And gives a buzz, as if to say,  
 "At present I haven't a minute to stay,  
 But I'll peep in again in the **course** of<sup>7</sup> the day."  
     Then again he'll fly  
     Where the sunbeams lie,

---

<sup>1</sup> Bees and flies make a noise which we call buzzing. <sup>2</sup> A door is locked by means of a key, which is put into the keyhole.

<sup>3</sup> Tea is made in a teapot. <sup>4</sup> Or : puts his head quickly into.

<sup>5</sup> When good milk is left standing, the cream appears on top.

<sup>6</sup> When he has done this. <sup>7</sup> Or : during.

And neither stop to shake hands  
 Nor bid good-bye :  
 Such a strange little fellow is Mister Fly,  
 who goes where he pleases, low or high,  
 And can walk on the **ceiling**<sup>8</sup>  
 Without ever feeling  
 A fear of tumbling down "**sky-high**"!<sup>9</sup>

THOMAS MILLER.

<sup>8</sup> The top of the room. <sup>9</sup> Or: from the sky.

### XXX. Answer to a Child's Question.

Do you ask what the birds say? The sparrow, the dove,  
 The **linnet**<sup>1</sup> and **thrush**<sup>1</sup> say, "I love and I love!"  
 In the winter they're silent—the wind is so strong;  
 What it says, I don't know, but it sings a loud song.  
 But green leaves, and blossoms, and sunny warm weather,  
 And singing, and loving—all come back together.  
 But the lark is so **brimful**<sup>2</sup> of gladness and love,  
 The green fields below him, the blue sky above,  
 That he sings, and he sings; and for ever sings he—  
 "I love my Love, and my Love loves me!"

S. T. COLERIDGE.

<sup>1</sup> Both these are singing birds. <sup>2</sup> Full to the brim (cp. XXIII. B. 1), very full.

### XXXI. Laughing Song.

When the green woods laugh with the voice of joy,  
 And the **dimpling stream**<sup>1</sup> runs laughing by;  
 When the air does laugh with our merry wit,<sup>2</sup>  
 And the green hill laughs with the noise of it;  
 When the meadows laugh with **lively**<sup>3</sup> green,  
 And the **grasshopper**<sup>4</sup> laughs in the merry scene,<sup>5</sup>  
 When Mary and Susan<sup>6</sup> and Emily<sup>6</sup>  
 With their sweet round mouths sing "Ha, Ha, He!"  
 When the painted<sup>7</sup> birds laugh in the shade,  
 Where our table with cherries and nuts is spread,  
 Come live, and be merry, and join with me,  
 To sing the sweet **chorus**<sup>8</sup> of "Ha, Ha, He!"

WILLIAM BLAKE.

---

<sup>1</sup> Some people have a **dimple** (a little hole) in their chin or their cheeks. A stream (of water) sometimes has little holes that look like dimples. <sup>2</sup> Or: **merriness, mirth, merriment.** <sup>3</sup> Full of life, bright. <sup>4</sup> An insect often found in meadows. It hops to a great height. <sup>5</sup> All that we can see. <sup>6</sup> Girls' names. <sup>7</sup> Their colours are bright, as though they were painted. <sup>8</sup> When all join in singing, we call it a chorus.

### XXXII. Mine Host of the "Golden Apple."

A kindly **host**<sup>1</sup> one day was mine,  
 A Golden Apple his only sign,  
 That hung from a long branch, ripe and fine.

---

<sup>1</sup> I visited him. He was my host (or: mine host), I was his **guest.**

My host was the beautiful Apple-tree;  
 He gave me shelter and **nourished**<sup>2</sup> me  
 With the best of food, all fresh and free.

And **light-winged**<sup>3</sup> guests<sup>1</sup> came not a few,  
 To his **leafy**<sup>4</sup> inn, and sipped the dew,  
 And sang glad songs before they flew.

I slept at night on a nice soft bed  
 Of **moss**,<sup>5</sup> and my host so gently spread  
 His own cool shadow over my head.

When I asked how much to pay there might be,  
 He shook his great boughs merrily: —  
 A thousand thanks, green Apple-tree!

THOMAS WESTWOOD.

---

<sup>2</sup> Gave me something to eat. <sup>3</sup> With light wings, flying easily. <sup>4</sup> With many leaves. <sup>5</sup> A very small plant that grows on rocks, under trees, etc.

### XXXIII. The Useful Plough.

A country life is sweet;  
 In **moderate**<sup>1</sup> cold and heat,  
 To walk in in the air how pleasant and fair,  
 In every field of **wheat**,<sup>2</sup>  
 The fairest of flowers **adorning**<sup>3</sup> the **bowers**,<sup>4</sup>  
 And every meadow's **brow**,<sup>5</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Not very great, not extreme. <sup>2</sup> Bread is made of wheat.  
<sup>3</sup> Making beautiful. <sup>4</sup> Places covered by the leafy branches of trees. <sup>5</sup> Or: forehead.

So that, I say, no **courtier**<sup>6</sup> may  
 Compare with they<sup>7</sup> who **clothe** in grey,<sup>8</sup>  
 And follow the useful plough.

They rise with the morning lark,  
 And labour till almost dark,  
 Then **folding**<sup>9</sup> their sheep, they hasten to sleep ;  
 While every pleasant **park**<sup>10</sup>  
 Next morning is ringing with birds that are singing  
 On each green tender bough.  
 With what content and merriment  
 Their days are spent, whose minds are bent<sup>11</sup>  
 To follow the useful plough.

<sup>6</sup> No man at **court**, where the King lives; no fine gentleman. <sup>7</sup> This should be: them or those. <sup>8</sup> Or; wear grey clothes. <sup>9</sup> At night the sheep stay in a **fold**. <sup>10</sup> A large garden; with big trees. <sup>11</sup> Whose business it is.

### XXXIV. Something Childish but Very Natural.

If I had but two little wings,  
 And were a little **feathery**<sup>1</sup> bird,  
 To you I'd<sup>2</sup> fly, my dear!  
 But thoughts like these are idle things,  
 And I stay here.

But in my sleep to you I fly:  
 I'm always with you in my sleep;  
 The world is all one's own.

<sup>1</sup> Covered with feathers. <sup>2</sup> I should.

But then one wakes, and where am I?

All, all alone.

Sleep stays not, though a monarch<sup>3</sup> bids:

So I love to wake ere break of day<sup>4</sup>:

For though my sleep be gone,

Yet, while 'tis dark, one shuts one's lids,<sup>5</sup>

And still dreams on.

S. T. COLERIDGE.

<sup>3</sup> Or: King. <sup>4</sup> Or: before daybreak cf. (XIII. 3). <sup>5</sup> The eyes may be covered with the lids. When we are asleep, our lids are shut.

### XXXV. The Old Navy.

The captain stood by the carronade:<sup>1</sup> "First lieutenant,"<sup>2</sup>  
says he,

"Send all my merry men aft<sup>3</sup> here, for they must  
list<sup>4</sup> to me;

I haven't the gift of the gab,<sup>5</sup> my sons—because I'm  
bred to the sea;<sup>6</sup>

That ship there is a Frenchman, who means to fight  
with we.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A kind of gun, first made at Carron (in Scotland) in 1779. <sup>2</sup> An officer. <sup>3</sup> In or near the stern (back of ship). <sup>4</sup> An old form of: listen. <sup>5</sup> I am not clever at speaking; it has not been given to me. Gift, *v.* to give. Gab, *cp.* to gabble, to talk very fast. <sup>6</sup> I am a seaman. Sailors do not speak much. <sup>7</sup> This should be: with us.

And **odds bobs**,<sup>8</sup> hammer and **tongs**,<sup>9</sup> long as  
I've been to sea,<sup>10</sup>

I've fought 'gainst every **odds**<sup>11</sup>—but I've gained  
the victory!

“That ship there is a Frenchman, and if we don't  
take she,<sup>12</sup>

'Tis a thousand **bullets**<sup>13</sup> to one, that she will capture  
we; <sup>14</sup>

I haven't the gift of the gab, my boys; so each man  
to his gun,<sup>15</sup>

If she's not mine in half an hour, I'll **flog**<sup>16</sup> each  
mother's son.

For odds bobs, hammer and tongs, long as I've  
been fo sea,

I've fought 'gainst every odds—and I've gained  
the victory!“

<sup>8</sup> An exclamation (*v.* to exclaim). “!” is the sign of exclamation. (<sup>9</sup>, <sup>10</sup>, <sup>11</sup> See next page). <sup>9</sup> These words are also part of the exclamation. When we want to put a piece of coal on the fire, we do not take it up with our fingers, because that would make them black; we use the tongs. <sup>10</sup> During all the time that I have been a sailor. <sup>11</sup> Even when the odds were against me, even when I had a smaller ship and fewer men than the enemy. The odds are two to one: there are two on one side and one on the other. <sup>12</sup> Should be: her. Sailors say “she” of a ship, not “it.” <sup>13</sup> We shoot with bullets (of metal). <sup>14</sup> Should be: us. <sup>15</sup> Let each man go to his gun, take his place beside his gun. <sup>16</sup> Or: beat.

We fought for twenty minutes, when the Frenchman  
had enough;

"I little thought," said he, "that your men were made  
of such **stuff**;"<sup>17</sup>

Our captain took the Frenchman's sword, a low **bow**<sup>18</sup>  
made to he;

"I haven't the gift of the gab, monsieur,"<sup>19</sup> but **polite**<sup>20</sup>  
I wish to be.

And odds bobs, hammer and tongs, long as I've  
been to sea,

I've fought 'gainst every odds—and I've gained  
the victory!"

Our captain sent for all of us: "My merry men," said he,  
"I haven't the gift of the gab, my lads, but yet I  
thankful be;"<sup>21</sup>

You've done your **duty**<sup>22</sup> **handsomely**,<sup>23</sup> each man  
stood to his gun;

If you hadn't, you **villains**,<sup>24</sup> as sure as day, I'd have  
flogged each mother's son.

For odds bobs, hammer and tongs, as long as  
I'm at sea,

I'll fight 'gainst every odds—and I'll gain the  
victory!"

F. MARRYAT.

---

<sup>17</sup> So brave. <sup>18</sup> When we meet a lady in the street, we take off our hats and we bow. <sup>19</sup> The French word for "sir". The captain said [məsu:]. <sup>20</sup> He showed that he was polite by bowing. <sup>21</sup> Should be: am. <sup>22</sup> Our duty is what we ought to do. "England expects every man to do his duty," said Nelson at the battle of Trafalgar. <sup>23</sup> Or; well. <sup>24</sup> A villain is really a man who has done a very bad action. The captain is not using the word seriously here.

## XXXVI. The Sea.

The sea! the sea! the open sea!  
 The blue, the fresh, the ever free!  
 Without a mark, without a **bound**<sup>1</sup>,  
 It runneth the earth's wide **regions** round;<sup>2</sup>  
 It plays with the clouds; it **mocks** the skies;<sup>3</sup>  
 Or like a **cradled** creature<sup>4</sup> lies.

I'm on the sea! I'm on the sea!  
 I am where I would ever be;<sup>5</sup>  
 With the blue above, and the blue below,  
 And silence **wheresoe'er**<sup>6</sup> I go:  
 If a storm should come and awake the deep,  
 What matter?<sup>7</sup> I shall ride and sleep.

I never was on the dull, **tame**<sup>8</sup> shore,  
 But I loved the great sea more and more,<sup>9</sup>  
 And **backwards**<sup>10</sup> flew to her **billowy**<sup>11</sup> **breast**,<sup>12</sup>  
 Like a bird that seeketh its mother's nest:

---

<sup>1</sup> Or: **unbounded**; there seems to be no end to it. <sup>2</sup> It runs round the wide regions (countries, parts) of the world. <sup>3</sup> When the sea is calm, it shows a picture of the sky; it seems to take the appearance of the sky, to mock it. <sup>4</sup> A creature in a **cradle**. Babies sleep in cradles. <sup>5</sup> I should always like to be. <sup>6</sup> Or: wherever. <sup>7</sup> What is that to me? What do I care? <sup>8</sup> Quiet; *opp.* wild, fierce. <sup>9</sup> Whenever I go on land, it makes me love the sea more. <sup>10</sup> Or: back. <sup>11</sup> *s.* **billow** (wave). <sup>12</sup> The front of the body, between the shoulders.

And a mother she was and is to me ;  
For I was born on the open sea !

I've lived since then, in calm and **strife**<sup>13</sup>  
Full fifty summers<sup>14</sup> a sailor's life,  
With wealth to spend, and a power to **range**,<sup>15</sup>  
But never have sought nor sighed for change ;  
And Death, whenever he comes to me,  
Shall come on the wild unbounded<sup>1</sup> sea !

BARRY CORNWALL.

---

<sup>13</sup> Here: storm. (Strife also means quarrelling.) <sup>14</sup> Quite  
fifty years. <sup>15</sup> Or: travel, go from land to land.

---



## EXERCISES.

### I. THE CRICKET'S SCHOOL.

A. (1) What is a cricket? (2) Have you ever seen one? (3) How can you tell that there are crickets in a cornfield? (4) Was this cricket young and modest? (5) What did he like saying to the other crickets? (6) Why did the other big crickets not say anything when they heard him tell stories? (7) Whom did he often teach? (8) What did he talk about? (9) How did he tell them to stand? (10) Do you ever stand like that? (11) What do crickets do with their legs? (12) What seemed strange to the little crickets? (13) What queer things had the big cricket seen? (14) What does the cricket use for flying? (15) Are insects two-legged creatures? What four-footed creatures could the cricket see (16) in the cornfield? (17) in a farm? (18) Was he truly brave? (19) Give the name of a brave man, (20) a brave woman. (21) Why did the cricket not finish his last sentence? (22) How did Brown Bess get into the field? (23) Why were the little crickets in such a hurry? (24) Did the fat old cricket stay just where he was?

B. 1. Substantives to : loud, forgetful, bright, teach, brave.

2. Adjectives to : forget, boast, sorrow.

3. Other words : he had a good opinion of himself, he is fond of talking, hardly ever, generally, he used to come, to jump, living beings, it seems to me much nicer, strange, they have no wings at all, having four feet, he said some more, to look at, just then, they had come together, they fell.

4. Opposite to : thin, young, softly, remember, often, less, a hind leg, that is wrong, easy, never.

5. Write sentences containing these words : to boast, to teach, row, creature, sorry, to spread out, to rub, brave, to hurry, to tumble.

C. 1. *Example* : They sing by *rubbing* their wings together. (a) We let in the air by—the window (to open). (b) The cricket talked about—and—(to run, to fly). (c) By—this book, I made my father sad (to lose). (d) After—the field, Bess ate some grass (to enter). (e) I made a hole in the fence by—it (to break). (f) The cricket showed he was not brave by — away instead of — (to hurry, to stay).

2. Read the story, using the present of the verb instead of the past, wherever you can. (There is a . . . cricket, who thinks . . . he has, etc.)

3. *Example* : The cricket had a *big body*. What had the cricket? (a) He talked *about wonderful things*. (b) We leap *with our legs*. (c) They make houses *in the ground*. (d) Most creatures hear *with ears*. (e) He spread out *his wings*. (f) I was never afraid *of cows*. (g) The old cricket had been *in the great world*.

D. 1. Suppose you are one of the little crickets. Say what you learnt from the fat old cricket.

2. Brown Bess tells us what sort of a creature a cricket is.

3. Tell the story with a frog instead of the fat old cricket, **tadpoles** instead of the little crickets, and a duck instead of the cow.

## II. HOW MRS WHITE HEN HELPED ROSE.

A. (1) Are there roses in your garden? (2) When do they droop? (3) Why did this rose droop? (4) How did the sun find out? (5) What is a worm like? (6) Why would the sun not shine? (7) Where did he hide? (8) What did the wind want to know? (9) Why did he drop to the earth? (10) Who was surprised at this? (11) Why did the bird fly away silently? (12) Where was his nest? (13) What did the old tree say? (14) What is a squirrel? (15) What did he want of the tree? (16) Whom did he meet? (17) What sort of a voice has the duck? (18) Did the hen stop working? (19) Where did she go? (20) What did she do to the worm? (21) What might the sun have done? (22) And the wind? (23) Did the squirrel get what he wanted? (24) Did the hen boast about what she had done?

B. 1. Substantives to: grow, warm, long, ugly, dark, fly.

2. Other words: it seemed strange to me, what is wrong with you? the wind has stopped blowing, please tell me this, all at once.

3. A man walks, a worm —, a duck — on land, but — in the water.

4. A man talks or whispers, a bird — or —, a duck —, a dog —.

5. Draw an acorn and a nut; the bill of a bird; a worm.

X 6. Write sentences containing these words: to surprise, to sigh, sunny, to crawl, hollow, to search, a shower, sunset, darkness, kernel.

C. 1. Put the verb into the past: (a) She feels sorry for me. (b) The sun rises at six o'clock. (c) Tom sends you his love. (d) We are eating our breakfast. (e) He does not come often. (f) The sun shines into this room. (g) This bird sings beautifully. (h) The wind often blows from the west. (i) When will you meet him? (j) He stops working at twelve.

2. In the following sentences put a preposition in place of the dash: (a) The rose smiled — the sun. (b) Are you sorry — the rose? (c) The sun is hiding — a cloud. (d) The acorn dropped — the ground. (e) The bird's nest was — the oak. (f) We are on the way — our home. (g) Will you do something — me? (h) The hen searched — the leaves. (i) The rose looked up — the sun. (j) They had not thought — some way to help Rose.

3. *Example*: He went out: He did not go out. (a) Roses grew in the garden. (b) The sun rose at six o'clock. (c) The worm ate many leaves. (d) The wind blew. (e) The birds sang all the morning. (f) I

could see the acorns. (g) The duck swam about. (h) The hen hurried to Rose. (i) The wind sprang up suddenly.

D. 1. The sunbeam tells us why he was sent to the earth, what the rose told him, what he told the sun, what the sun did, and what happened to the caterpillar.

2. Suppose that you are the squirrel; say how you searched for nuts, asked the oak for acorns, why you could not get any, and how you got them at last.

### III. TWO FABLES.

A. (1) Where did the lion and the gnat live? (2) Why is the lion called the king of the animals. (3) What did the gnat want to know? (4) What was he going to do? (5) Did the other animals take this seriously? (6) What did they promise the gnat? (7) When did the gnat find the lion asleep? (8) Where did he find him? (9) Did he think that was a good time for killing him? (10) Where did he sting him? (11) What did he think? (12) Did the lion go on sleeping? (13) Did he notice the gnat?

(14) Who visited the peacock? (15) Which is the largest of these three birds? (16) Did the crow say nice things about the peacock? (17) What had he noticed? (18) What did the dove think about the peacock?

B. 1. Substantives to: strong, warm, long, think, bleed, ugly.

2. Adjectives to: fun, sleep, might, pride, beauty.

3. Opposites to: weak, a little, seriously, sleeping lightly, alive, always, pleasant, beautiful, modest.

4. Other words: I am not sure about that, they took his life, they said they would make him king, very strong, we got up, we paid him a visit.

5. Draw a dove and say which is its bill, its tail, its foot.

6. Write sentences containing these words: forest, to kill, to sting, crow, peacock, unpleasant, pride.

C. 1. Put the verbs into the future: (a) The gnat did not kill the lion. (b) He found the lion. (c) He thought he would kill him. (d) He crept up and stung him. (e) The lion rose and never knew that the gnat had been there. (f) The crow did not notice what was beautiful. (g) The dove only saw what was pleasant.

2. Add adverbs to the following sentences. [*Example*: They lived *happily*.] (a) The gnat talked (boastful). (b) The animals laughed (loud). (c) They did not promise it (serious). (d) The gnat crept up (slow). (e) He did not walk away very (quick). (f) The peacock does not sing (pleasant). (g) He carries his head (royal).

3. *Example*: I am old, you are 2, he is 3: I am old, you are older, he is the oldest. (a) The dog is strong, but the lion is 2. Is the gnat 3? (b) This is

a good book, but that one is 2; it is 3 book I have. (e) Tom runs quickly, but William runs 2. (d) The lion is mighty; is any animal 2 than the lion? Some say that he is 3 of all. (e) You have done much work, but your brother has done 2, and your sister 3. (f) The feathers of some doves are beautiful, but those of the peacock are 2. Which is 3 bird you know? (g) Our room is big, it is 2 than yours, but it is not 3 in the school.

D. 1. The gnat tells us how he thought he had killed the lion, and how surprised he was when he met the lion next day.

2. The crow and the dove visited Brown Bess, the cow. What did each say about the cow on the way home?

#### IV. THE BUTTERFLY THAT WENT CALLING.

A. (1) Whom did the butterfly visit? (2) Why were the daisies dancing? (3) Did they look sad? (4) What did they say to the butterfly when they saw him? (5) Where did the daisies live? (6) What made them smile? (7) Why did the butterfly shake his head? (8) Where do the buttercups grow? (9) What did the butterfly say about the river? (10) Did he think the buttercups had a healthy home? (11) Do buttercups and butterflies live in the same way? (12) Why did Mr Butterfly's feelers quiver? (13) Why did he fly to the violets? (14) Did he like their home? (15)

What did the violets think about the homes of the other flowers? (16) Was the violet kind to the butterfly? (17) What lesson did Mr Butterfly learn?

B. 1. Substantives to: visit, cheerful, reply, kind, doubt, plant.

2. Adjectives to: dust, beauty, health, anger, mud.

3. Other words: desire, answer, I am much obliged to you, it seems strange to me, this sort of place is good enough for me, no doubt he will do it, he said "good-bye" to me, they carry their heads proudly, the leaf trembled, she has strange thoughts, they are willing to learn.

4. Draw a rosebush, showing the root, the branches, the leaves, a flower, and a bud.

5. Write sentences containing these words: to nod, to bid, violet, neighbourhood, mud, moonlight, root.

6. Give the names of all the flowers you know.

C. 1. Put prepositions in place of the dash: (a) The daisy grew—the wayside. (b) Will you spend the day—us? (c) They nodded—each other. (d) Is that enough—you? (e) He called—the buttercups. (f) He is flying—the violets. (g) Their home is—the edge of the wood. (h) The violet listened—him. (i) She was silent—a moment. (j) It is not good—you to get wet. (k) I am thinking—my home.

2. Put the verbs into the perfect. (*Example*: He flew away—he has flown away.) (a) We spent the day with them. (b) I found a nice home. (c) He shook his head. (d) He told me so. (e) I am thinking about

you. (f) He chose this book. (g) She is learning English. (h) He spoke to the violets. (i) They grew very quickly.

3. *Example*: The butterfly saw some daisies. What did the butterfly see? (a) Their faces looked cheerful. (b) He could not stay with them. (c) They nodded to each other. (d) The buttercup grew by the side of the water. (e) He was so angry that his feelers quivered. (f) They would not listen to him.

D. 1. A buttercup relates the butterfly's visit.

2. A sparrow goes calling. It visits a crow, a peacock, and a dove.

3. Describe some flowers and the places where they live.

#### V. THE WISDOM OF A POOR MAN.

A. (1) When did the poor man tie his horse to a tree? (2) Why did he do so? (3) Was his horse gentle? (4) Who came along? (5) What did he want to do? (6) Where did he tie his horse? (7) What did he do then? (8) Why was there a noise? (9) Did the men let the horses fight? (10) Were they in time to stop them? (11) Why was the rich man angry? (12) Where did he take the poor man? (13) Did the rich man say his own horse was savage? (14) What answer did the poor man give to the judge? (15) What did the judge think about him? (16) Was the rich man wise? (17) Did the judge blame the poor man? (18)

Did he make him pay anything? (19) Why not? (20)  
Was the rich man pleased?

B. 1. Substantives to: proud, angry, wise, beauty, warn, true, pleasure.

2. Other words for: noon, begin, fasten, where you like, all at once, not a single word, he replied, you speak clearly.

3. Opposite to: rich, gentle, modestly, too early, alive, he took him gently, foolish, ugly, he opened his lips, I was praised.

4. By means of what do you tie? speak? hear? fight? dance?

5. Write sentences containing these words: midnight, savage, gentle, to rush up, to drag, never a word, to warn, to blame, to heed, to praise.

C. 1. Finish these sentences: (a) He sat down to—. (b) He started to—. (c) The men wanted to—. (d) He dragged the poor man—. (e) The judge asked him—. (f) The poor man spoke to me on—. (g) He need not—. (h) If I had told you what I said to him—. (i) He praised the poor man—.

2. Tell the whole story with the verbs in the present.

3. The judge tells the story to a friend.

## VI. THE WOLF AND THE LAMB.

A. (1) Where did the lamb lose his way? (2) Why did he bleat? (3) Who heard him? (4) Why

was the wolf pleased? (5) What did the lamb beg of the Wolf? (6) Did he do what the lamb wanted? (7) Did he eat the lamb? (8) Had the lamb heard people speak of the wolf's fine voice? (9) Why was the wolf pleased this time? (10) How did the lamb dance? (11) Did the wolf sing loud enough for the lamb? (12) What did the wolf say about his singing? (13) Who heard the noise? (14) Did the wolf stay with the lamb? (15) Where did the lamb go? (16) What did the wolf say to himself?

B. 1. Substantives to: frighten, die, sing, dance, live, save.

3. Other words for: the lamb started to bleat, a happy thought, I am very fond of dancing, one song and no more, he danced as well as he could, can you not do better? to sing quickly, he tried to save his life by running.

4. Write sentences with these words: wolf, hungry, to frighten, to dance, to go without, idea, eagle, death.

5. Give the names of all the animals you know.

C. 1. Tell the story in the present.

2. Put the *-ing* form of the verb in the following sentences: (a) The lamb showed its fright by — (to bleat). (b) Have you heard the — of a wolf? (to growl). (c) The wolf thought of — the lamb (to eat). (d) I love — (to dance). (e) — is good before — (to sing, to eat). (f) The dogs came — along (to run).

3. Put in prepositions: (a) The wolf sprang — the lamb. (b) It was almost dead — fright. (c) The peacock was proud — his feathers. (d) The wolf often sang — his dinner. (e) Did the lamb dance — the last time? (f) The dogs ran — the wood. (g) The wolf ran — his life. (h) He had to go — his dinner.

- D. 1. The wolf tells the story to a brother wolf.  
 2. Tell the story with an eagle and a duck, instead of the wolf and the lamb.

#### VII. THE FOX, THE BEAR, AND THE FARMER (1).

A. (1) Where did the farmer go one morning? (2) Why did he not plough with oxen? (3) Where was his field? (4) Why did he leave his plough? (5) What was making the noise? (6) Was it a little animal that he saw? (7) What struck him as funny? (8) What made the bear angry? (9) Why did the farmer make no reply? (10) Why were the bear's jaws wide open? (11) What did the farmer promise? (12) Why did tears come into his eyes? (13) What did he say at last? (14) To what did the bear consent? (15) Who came by about midday? (16) Was he savage? (17) What did he promise the farmer? (18) What did the farmer offer him for his help?

B. 1. Substantive to : plough, see, frighten, live, cautious.

2. Adverb to : soft, real, fierce, final, cheerful, easy.

3. Opposite to: rich, evening, loudly, very, small, he went on (laughing), always, gentle, light, glad.

4. Other words: with caution, very big, it seemed strange to me, he was able to speak again, great fear, they had to laugh, immediately, savage, gladly, about midday, what is more.

5. Write sentences with these words: huge, to amuse, jaw, terror, fierce, to sow, to consent, rug.

C. 1. Read the story with the verbs in the present, and *you* instead of *a poor farmer*.

2. Finish these sentences: — (a) He was too poor to —. (b) It is too late to —. (c) He is too young to —. (d) I am too tired to —. (e) He was too much frightened to —. (f) They were too cautious to —.

3. Put into the past: — (a) I cannot help laughing. (b) He will not have the chance to go. (c) I beg you not to eat me. (d) That cannot be done. (e) He will give me the birds.

D. 1. The bear tells us how he was dancing one morning, how the farmer made him angry, and what followed.

2. The farmer tells his wife why he has agreed to give the fox nine hens and a cock.

### VIII. THE FOX, THE BEAR, AND THE FARMER (2).

A. (1) When did the bear come? (2) Where was the fox then? (3) What did he do there? (4) Was the bear glad to hear it? (5) Why not? (6) Where

did he crawl? (7) What did the fox ask about the sack? (8) How was the bear killed? (9) What did the farmer learn from the fox? (10) Did he still look sad? (11) How did he sleep? (12) When did the fox call on him? (13) What did he ask for? (14) Did the farmer give him what he wanted? (15) What made the fox anxious? (16) Were there really two hounds under the farmer's bed? (17) Where did the fox go? (18) Do you think he went slowly?

B. 1. Substantives to: hunt, advise, clever, sorry, rejoice, terrible.

2. Other words: terrified, hide, then, do not move! the highest part, he struck me, at once, he will suffer for it, hardly, he asked for the hens, he has gone out of sight.

3. Draw a wagon with a horse. Show the wheels and the horse's head, mouth, back, legs and tail.

4. Write sentences containing these words: to conceal, sack, to hit, to seize, to advise, trap, load, to demand, anxious, to disappear.

C. 1. Put in prepositions: (a) He listened— them. (b) They hid — the bushes. (c) He crawled — the sack. (d) The fox came — the bushes. (e) He hit the sack — top — his axe. (f) He was pleased — the fox's advice, and followed it — the letter. (g) He promised to call — the hens. (h) He had no fear — the fox. (i) He had learnt much — him. (j) The fox knocked — the door. (k) There were no hounds — the bed.

2. *Example*: It is raining: He says it will rain: he said it would rain. (a) The fox is running away. (b) The farmer is laughing heartily. (c) I am anxious. (d) You are sorry for it. (e) He is giving me time to dress. (f) It is all in vain. ✓

3. *Example*: The bear will come *this evening*: When will the bear come? (a) He will beg you to *conceal* him. (b) Wood is in that sack. (c) He hit it *with his axe*. (d) He ate a *hearty* supper. (e) He dressed *hastily*. (f) They slept *under the bed*.

D. 1. The farmer tells us how he was cleverer than the fox.

2. Tell the whole story without looking at the book.

### IX. THE PEDLAR'S PACK.

A. (1) Where was the pedlar? (2) What had he on his back? (3) Where did he see a donkey? (4) Did this animal do what he wanted? (5) What did the pedlar promise to give? (6) Why did the donkey want the crow to sit on his back? (7) Had he much gold to give? (8) Did the sparrow want to earn some money? (9) What did the sparrow bring to the crow? (10) Was it a small town that came into sight? (11) What did the pedlar take out of his pack? (12) What did the sparrow like best? (13) Was the price low? (14) How much did the sparrow offer? (15) Why was the pedlar pleased? (16) How much did the crow owe the sparrow? (17) Could the crow

pay this? (18) What happened when they were quarrelling? (19) What did the officer call them? (20) Did the mayor listen carefully to their complaints? (21) What was to be done to the donkey? (22) Who kept the shawl?

B. 1. Adjectives to: dust, distance, hunger, anger, worth.

2. Substantives to: to journey, to promise, to pass by, to complain.

3. Other words: please do this, he answered, fairly soon, tell me how much money you want for this, he is in need of money, the price of this horse is too high, they went back.

4. Opposite to: a long way, evening true, sadly, to say aloud, very little.

5. Give the names of all insects you know.

6. Write sentences containing these words: false, to earn, distance, shawl, price, to owe, instant, across, worthless, to order, cause.

C. 1. Complete the sentences, using the *-ing* forms of the verbs in brackets: — (a) He walked along — his pack (to carry). (b) Would you mind — this load (to take)? (c) He offered him money for — away the flies (to drive). (d) The crow was — on the donkey's back (to sit). (e) He said this, — to himself (to smile). (f) That is too much money for — a few worms (to bring). (g) On — it over, he said he would not pay so much (to think). (h) Why did you keep me — so

long (to wait). (*i*) The donkey had a sound — (to beat). (*j*) The shawl was the cause of their — (to quarrel).

2. *Example* — I can do it: I could do it, I shall be able to do it. (*a*) He is carrying a load. (*b*) He knows that he has no money. (*c*) She often gives me flowers. (*d*) He owes me 5s. (*e*) The sparrow is bringing a worm. (*f*) The mayor orders the donkey to be beaten. (*g*) They are going along the road. (*h*) They take shawls out of their packs. (*i*) They complain of each other to the mayor. (*j*) The officer leads them away.

3. *Example*: He saw a donkey: He did not see a donkey. (*a*) The pedlar carried his pack. (*b*) He gave him some gold. (*c*) They met a crow. (*d*) The crow drove away the flies. (*e*) The sparrow brought some worms. (*f*) He paid me yesterday. (*g*) He took out some shawls. (*h*) The sparrow flew away. (*i*) The pedlar replied. (*j*) I can wait.

D. 1. One boy (or girl) is the pedlar, another the donkey, a third the crow, a fourth the sparrow, a fifth the officer, and a sixth the mayor. Each says the words given in the story.

2. The officer tells us how he heard the noise, and asked for the cause of the quarrel, how they complained to him; and what happened when he had taken them to the mayor.

## X. DICK WHITTINGTON AND HIS CAT (1).

A. (1) What was Edward the Third? (2) When did Dick's father die? (3) Did he live in a town? (4) Why was he badly off? (5) Could the people in the village give him plenty to eat? (6) Was Dick a dull boy? (7) Where did he hear people talking about London? (8) What strange ideas had they about this town? (9) With whom did Dick go to London? (10) Did he find any gold there? (11) What made him quite weak? (12) Was the cook kind to him? (13) What did she say? (14) Why did Mr Fitzwarren think him lazy? (15) Did he drive him away from his door? (16) What did Alice Fitzwarren say to the cook? (17) What sort of a bedroom had Dick? (18) Why did he buy a cat? (19) Why was he sorry to let the cat go? (20) What did Alice do when she saw this? (21) What made him run away? (22) Where is Whittington's stone? (23) What did he hear when he was sitting there? (24) Did the cook know that he had gone out?

B. 1. Substantives to : to die, distant, to trouble, to dine, to feed, kind, fortunate, to sit.

2. Adjectives to : rag, music, wonder, hunger, dirt, sorrow, anger, luck.

3. Verbs to : song, thought, sleep.

4. Opposite to : well off, much, dull, never, inside, nobody, dark, he sat down, strong, clean, right, plenty, (to eat), at a low price, early in the morning, everything, downstairs.

5. Other words: he made them run away, we came back, very many children, I started, by the side of, you will come to London, a week had passed, immediately, that is not true, what is the matter? scarcely, he has grown old, fortunate.

6. Write sentences with these words: well off, listening, paved with gold, fine clothes, as fast as he could, inclined to be lazy, not the case, she scolded, treated him badly, he got rid of, captain, at a high price, grown fond of, ready to bear anything.

C. 1. Prepositions: (a) He ran — the village. (b) He had nothing — his breakfast. (c) They sat — the inn. (d) Are the streets paved — gold? (e) The wagon drove — the village. (f) He walked — the wagon. (g) He was quite weak — want of food. (h) He lay down — the door of a merchant. (i) I'll throw water — you! (j) He worked — all his heart. (k) They took him — the house. (l) The rats came — the holes. (m) The house was sold — a low price. (n) He was troubled — the mice. (o) He walked — Highgate.

2. Read from "Now Dick was a bright boy" to "paved with gold," with the verbs in the present, and "you" instead of "Dick."

3. Add adverbs to these sentences: (a) He walked (quick). (b) They were singing (happy). (c) She looked at him (angry). (d) He spoke to Dick (kind). (e) The cook treated him (bad). (f) He could now sleep (quiet).

D. 1. The wagoner tells us how he first saw Dick, and how Dick went with him to London.

2. The cook tells us what she knows about Dick.

3. Dick's cat tells us how she was bought, where she lived, what she did there, and why she left Dick.

#### XI. DICK WHITTINGTON AND HIS CAT (2).

A. (1) Where was the ship driven? (2) What did the Moors think of the wares? (3) What did the captain send to the King? (4) What did the King do? (5) What seemed strange to the captain? (6) Did the rats only come at dinner-time? (7) What did the captain then think of? (8) What did the King promise? (9) Was the captain a bad business man? (10) When did he return? (11) Did the rats eat the second dinner? (12) What did the King think of the cat? (13) Where did pussy go to sleep? (14) What did the King give in exchange for the cat? (15) What did the captain show Mr Fitzwarren? (16) What was Dick doing just then? (17) Why did he think Mr Fitzwarren was not in earnest? (18) What did Mr Fitzwarren say to him? (19) Did he take some of Dick's jewels? (20) Why did he give a present to the cook? (21) Whom did Dick marry? (22) Did the promise of the Bow Church bells come true? (23) Who made him a knight? (24) How was he called then?

B. 1. Adjectives to: to please, happiness, death, safety, care, fun, heart, kind heart, splendour.

2. Adverbs to: true, happy, careful, hearty, great.

3. Verbs to: joy, use, want, thought.

4. Other words: a very large number, they took what they pleased, I was surprised at this, not quite, at once, I am delighted to hear this, I doubt whether I can go there, we came back, the others ran away, he said he would buy the cat, they said "Good-bye," in exchange for the cat, I have no doubt.

5. Opposite to: pleasant, to forget, to appear, alive, at last, awake.

6. The dog barks, the cat—, the hen—, the duck—.

7. Write sentences with these words: to admire, palace, on board, jewel, diamond, in exchange for, to touch, to take leave, to accept, splendid, knight.

C. 1. *Example*: The ship was driven by the winds: the winds drove the ship. He was told to go: they told him to go. (a) The English had never been seen by the Moors. (b) The fine wares were much admired. (c) He was given a seat near the King. (d) Part of his dinner will be eaten by them. (e) These mice have been killed by our cat. (f) A meal was got ready. (g) By whom were the rats killed? (h) He did not wish to be troubled by mice again. (i) The presents will be shown by the captain. (j) He was asked to sit down. (k) The day for the wedding was fixed by Mrs Fitzwarren. (l) The figure of Sir Richard Whittington can no longer be seen.

2. *Example*: The captain sold the cat: the cat was sold by the captain. (a) He sent patterns to the

King. (b) He invited the captain. (c) They brought in many dishes. (d) Dick had given him a cat. (e) He has loaded their ship with gold. (f) They placed dishes on the tables. (g) They brought the creature to her. (h) The King will buy the cargo. (i) They had sent a rich present to Dick. (j) The old cook will accept her present. (k) Everybody likes him. (l) Who carved the figure in stone? -

3. *Example*: It was raining; he says it will rain; he said it would rain. (a) The mice rushed in. (b) He got rid of them. (c) The captain brought the cat. (d) He sold the cat. (e) They began to appear. (f) The cat fell asleep. (g) He told me about Dick. (h) He found a fine house for himself.

D. 1. The King complains about the rats, and tells us about the coming of the captain and the wonderful cat.

2. Alice tells us how Dick was fetched from the kitchen, thought they were making fun of him, scarcely believed his good fortune, and wanted her to take a part of his treasures.

3. What Mr Whittington remembered, when they told him that he was to be made Lord Mayor.

## XII. RIP VAN WINKLE (1).

A. (1) Where is the Hudson? (2) Why were these mountains like barometers? (3) Where was Rip Van Winkle's village? (4) When did he live there?

(5) Was he clever, but ill-tempered? (6) Why were the children fond of him? (7) Draw a kite on the blackboard. (8) Why did Rip's neighbours like him? (9) How did he attend to his own business? (11) Did all go well with it? (12) What kind of clothes did his children wear? (13) What was his son's name? (14) Was he a clever, industrious boy? (15) What was Rip's nature? (16) Did he earn much money? (17) Why was he not contented? (18) Did his wife rarely scold him? (19) What did she call him? (20) What answer did Rip give? (21) At whom did Dame Van Winkle grumble? (22) Who was Rip's companion? (23) How did they escape from being scolded? (24) Why did Rip take his gun? (25) Who received a share of his meal? (26) When does a dog wag his tail? (27) Do you like rambling through the woods? (28) What did Rip shoot? (29) What made the woods echo? (30) What appeared through the opening? (31) When did he hear a voice? (32) How often did he hear it? (33) How did Wolf feel when he heard it? (34) What did Rip perceive? (35) What was this strange figure doing?

B. 1. Adjectives to: wonder, good nature, fool, to continue, fear.

2. Substantives to: to travel, to use, like, to think, contented, careless, true, distant, to cry.

3. Other words: it is a very fine day, to shine, he cried aloud, he helped them in their games, they made use of him, he was always willing to help, he

looked after his farm, they died of hunger, frequently, lazy, I cannot bear it, the prisoner got away, Wolf received part of his meal, he noticed a queer figure.

4. Opposite to: to forget, near, at the top of the mountain, heavy, ill-tempered, more, possible, nothing, all went well, everybody, most, industrious, careful, she treats you well, the highest, he went up the hill quickly.

5. Draw on the blackboard (or on paper) a barometer, a house with smoke rising from it, a gun, a squirrel.

6. Write sentences with the following words: shape, gleam, many years ago, province, odd jobs, in spite of me, inherit, continually, companion, share, shoot, opening, descend, growl.

C. 1. Put the verbs into the imperfect and the pluperfect. (a) The traveller sees a village. (b) He shouts with joy. (c) Will you fly a kite? (d) She has told me all about it. (e) They often employ Rip. (f) He attends to the farm. (g) Does he keep it in order? (h) Everything goes wrong. (i) They always eat white bread. (j) We sometimes shrug our shoulders. (k) He stands a great deal. (l) I feel it is true. (m) The dog is wagging his tail. (n) I understand every word he says. (o) He feels sorry for you. (p) He will shoot those squirrels. (q) He is throwing himself on the ground. (r) I hear his cry.

2. Put in prepositions: (a) He made a voyage—the Hudson. (b) I perceived a change—the hue of the mountain. (c) The village is—the foot of the mountain.

(*d*) They shouted—joy. (*e*) Did Rip attend—his business?  
 (*f*) He did no work—home. (*g*) He got his bread—  
 little trouble. (*h*) He works—a pound a week. (*i*)  
 They left me—myself. (*j*) She scolded him—his  
 idleness. (*k*) It grew—a habit. (*l*) She grumbled—  
 the dog. (*m*) He escaped—his wife. (*n*) He shared  
 his meal—Wolf. (*o*) The child looked up—my face.  
 (*p*) I feel sorry—you. (*q*) He went for a ramble—  
 a fine autumn day. (*r*) We threw ourselves—the  
 grass. (*s*) The voice came—a distance. (*t*) The bird  
 flew—our garden. (*u*) The cry rang—the air. (*v*)  
 The dog looked—the trees. (*w*) Fear came—me.  
 (*x*) The man was bending—a heavy weight.

*Example: The shapes of the mountains* are wonder-  
 ful: What is wonderful? (*a*) Smoke rose from the  
 village. (*b*) Rip was good-natured. (*c*) The children  
 shouted with joy. (*d*) He never attended to his own  
 business. (*e*) He ate brown bread. (*f*) Rip felt he could  
 stand it no longer. (*g*) She treats you badly. (*h*) We  
 went out on a fine day. (*i*) He thought he had made  
 a mistake.

D. 1. Conversation between Rip and one of the  
 older men of the village, who blames him for not  
 looking after his farm.

2. Wolf describes a ramble: why they did not stay  
 in the house, where they went, how his master shot  
 squirrels, their meal, and the way home.

3. Dame Van Winkle gives us her opinion of  
 her husband and his dog.

## XIII. RIP VAN WINKLE (2).

A. (1) What surprised Rip? (2) Why did he hasten to help the man? (3) What was he carrying? (4) Did it appear to be empty? (5) Where did they go? (6) What sounds did Rip hear? (7) Was it really thunder? (8) What did Rip see in the hollow? (9) Was it a merry company? (10) Were these men dressed like Rip? (11) What filled Rip with fear? (12) What did his companion do with the keg? (13) Who waited on the company? (14) What did Rip then do? (15) Where was he when he woke? (16) What sort of a morning was it? (17) Did he find his gun? (18) Was Wolf by his side? (19) What had made him stiff? (20) Was the bed of the torrent dry? (21) Why did he determine to go home? (22) Whom did he meet near the village? (23) Why did they stroke their chins? (24) What did he notice about the village? (25) What did he see in the distance?

B. 1. Substantives to : to need, to assist, to appear, distant, to please, to contain, silent, to excuse, to search, active, difficult, anxious.

2. Adjectives to: to mourn, to agree, thirst, sun, rust, hunger.

3. Other words: he hastened away, he bore a keg, from time to time, he noticed queer things, I came near them, all at once, in a short time, the whole night.

4. Opposite to: empty, wide, wet, to descend, merry, to fill, to forget, to appear, easily, hill.

5. Draw some mountains, hills, and dales; also a torrent flowing through a narrow gully.

6. Write down all the words you know that we use when talking about the weather.

7. Write sentences containing the following words: signs, appearance, torrent, thunder, company, outlandish, fashion, party, excuse, rusty, repeat, determine, difficulty, approach, to point.

C. 1. Finish these sentences: (a) He hastened to —. (b) The gully seemed to be —. (c) The sound seemed —. (d) They were the saddest company —. (e) He made signs to him —. (f) He found the liquor —. (g) In place of his nice gun he found —. (h) Rip thought that the strange men —. (i) "These mountain beds —." (j) He found the gully which —. (k) The crows were flying —. (l) It surprised him that he met no one he knew, for —. (m) The children called after him and —. (n) There were rows of houses —.

2. *Example*: Rip assisted him: he was assisted by Rip. (a) He is helping the strange man. (b) We perceived strange things. (c) They amuse us. (d) He has emptied the keg. (e) No one noticed him. (f) He will revisit the hollow. (g) The cawing of the crows answered him.

3. *Example*: He helped him: He did not help him. (a) The man bore a keg. (b) The sound came from a ravine. (c) They uttered strange words. (d) Rip emptied the keg. (e) They drank silently. (f) Rip

grew afraid. (*g*) He rubbed his eyes. (*h*) We fell asleep. (*i*) They took their guns with them. (*j*) It fell to pieces. (*k*) You stayed at home.

D. 1. When Rip has fallen asleep, the strange man tells his companions how he found him and what will happen to him because he has drunk the liquor.

2. Wolf tells us how his master fell asleep, how he barked and pulled at his clothes to wake him, but in vain; how he went home, and what Dame Van Winkle said to him.

3. A child describes the appearance of Rip Van Winkle when he came back to his village.

#### XIV. RIP VAN WINKLE (3).

A. (1) Why was Dame Van Winkle no longer in her house? (2) What was the only living creature near it? (3) How could Rip see that Wolf had forgotten him? (4) What did he do on entering the house? (5) What had taken the place of the inn? (6) What attracted the men's attention? (7) What had these men perhaps been talking about? (8) Were they subjects of the King of England? (9) Who asked Rip what had brought him there? (10) Were the bystanders pleased when they heard his answer? (11) Was order restored easily? (12) Was Rip really a culprit? (13) Who had been Rip's neighbours? (14) What had happened to them? (15) Did Rip understand the answers to his questions? (16) Who was the Rip Van Winkle that the bystanders knew? (17) Was he an

industrious young fellow? (18) Why did the people tap their fingers against their foreheads? (19) Who was the Rip to whom the young woman said: "Hush"? (20) What did this young woman say about her father? (21) What amazed the people? (22) Who knew him again? (23) Why did the people shake their heads on hearing Rip's story? (24) Where did Rip spend the rest of his days? (25) To whom did Rip tell his strange story? (26) Have the people in his village forgotten it?

B. 1. Substantives to: difficult, true, to appear, to attend, curious, to begin, to think, cheerful, strange.

2. Adjectives to: silence, anger, attention, death, rag, grey beard, health.

3. Other words: every instant, I went into the house, there was not a sound, they hastened to the inn, a man who thinks a great deal of himself, he returned after the war, as it appeared, he will do you no harm, they were greatly surprised, every child knew the story by heart.

4. Opposite to: he left the house, known for a long time, alive, the end, his heart grew glad, everybody, industrious, well dressed.

5. Give the name of the King of England and of the President of the United States. What is the parliament of your country called? Is your country a republic? Or have you a king? When was the last war in which the soldiers of your country fought? When was the last election in your town?

6. Write sentences containing these words: to attract attention, curiosity, vote, native, loyal subject, to restore order, army, war, schoolmaster, puzzled, apparently, confused, to tap, memory, a thin voice, amazed, stranger.

C. 1. Put in prepositions: (a) He found his house — difficulty. (b) The dog looked — Wolf. (c) Rip called him — name. (d) He called — his wife. (e) The children ran — him. (f) The people gathered — him. (g) They looked — him — head — foot. (h) His rusty gun was — his shoulder. (i) "Away — him!" (j) He demanded — him why he came. (k) There was silence — a while. (l) People talked — strange things. (m) Young Rip was leaning — a tree. (n) They tapped their fingers — their foreheads. (o) He put the question — a trembling voice. (p) She looked — his face. (q) She had a farmer — a husband. (r) Many strangers arrived — the hotel. (s) Every one knew the story — heart. (t) Hudson is — his game again.

2. Put (i) the perfect and (ii) the future in place of the imperfect: (a) He found his house. (b) The old roof fell in. (c) The boys broke a window. (d) His dog forgot him. (e) They told us the truth. (f) She came up to me. (g) He soon restored order. (h) He went off to the wars. (i) He understood what they said. (j) I fell asleep. (k) They began to look at each other. (l) He was carried away. (m) The company broke up.

3. *Example*: I am young, but you are 2; and Dick is 3 in our family: I am young, but you are younger; and Dick is the youngest in our family. (a) Her house is not in good order; that house is in 2 order. (b) He called loudly, but no one answered; then he called 2. (c) This man is poor, but his neighbour is 2; that man is 3 in the village. (d) This paper is not very thin; that is a good deal 2. (e) Young Rip was as lazy as his father had been; there was no 2 man in the village, he was 3 of all. (f) Rip's house was not comfortable; his daughter's house was 2.

D. 1. One of the men at the hotel tells the story of Rip's return.

2. Rip's grandchild asks him about what he saw in the hollow, and Rip replies.

3. Tell the whole story in few words.

## XV. THE BRAVE CABIN BOY.

A. (1) When was Charles II. King of England? (2) Between which countries was there war? (3) Why were the sailors disheartened? (4) Was the weather fine? (5) Did the ships they saw belong to a friendly nation? (6) Did the Dutch not like to fight? (7) What was the condition of the flagship? (8) Could all the cannons be fired? (9) Why did the admiral not signal to the other ships? (10) What did he determine to do? (11) How much money did he promise? (12) Were

all the sailors afraid to go? (13) Why did the cabin boy want to go? (14) How did he carry the note? (15) How did those on the flag-ship know that he had reached the other ship? (16) What was the end of the battle? (17) Why were the sailors ordered on deck next morning? (18) Why did the boy not take the money? (19) What did the sailors think of him? (20) What gave the boy great pleasure? (21) Did the admiral's words come true?

B. 1. Adjectives to: storm, anger, friend, danger, to die, victory, pride.

2. Other words: they caught sight of a ship, all at once, battle-ship, we welcomed them, the roar of the cannon is louder than the wind, quite, he begged earnestly, he took his coat off quickly, they were told to come on deck.

3. Opposite to: false, alive, partly, slowly, a long letter, the battle was lost.

4. Write sentences containing the words: gale, to cruise, the look-out, the horizon, interest, discover, to dash, to roar, dangerously, partly, note, afterwards, naval victory, deck, satisfied, to come true.

5. Draw a man-of-war, with sailors on the deck, cannons being fired, smoke hanging round it, and waves dashing against it.

6. What are the colours of your flag? the flag of England?

C. 1. *Example*: Charles II. was *King of England*: What was Charles II? (a) They had been cruising

around for days. (b) Several ships appeared on the horizon. (c) They do not belong to a friendly nation. (d) The captain of the guns approaches the admiral. (e) The ship is in a dangerous condition. (f) The smoke is like a great fog. (g) He speaks to his sailors. (h) He folded the note as small as possible. (i) He told them of the cabin-boy. (j) He did it for love of the flag. (k) One might have thought they had won another victory. (l) It was worth hundreds of pounds.

2. Finish these sentences: (a) They hoped to meet —. (b) The cry of the lookout broke —. (c) They watched the ships with —. (d) The ships soon came within —. (e) The waves — against the ship and the cannons —. (f) Nothing can save us, unless —. (g) He asked the other ships to —. (h) The cabin boy was so little —. (i) Take this purse, for —. (j) Every word that the admiral spoke —. (k) The cabin boy became —.

3. *Example*: They searched (eager): they searched eagerly. (a) They are working (busy). (b) The ships are cleared for action (quick). (c) His ship was surrounded (entire). (d) The boy pleaded (earnest). (e) He drew himself up (proud). (f) The men cheered (loud). (g) He shook hands with him (warm).

D. 1. The admiral tells us why his fleet was cruising about, what disheartened the sailors, and how at last a sail was sighted; the fight, the dangerous condition of the ship, his promise of fifty pounds.

2. A sailor tells us about the bravery of the cabin boy.

## XVI. THE SEA KING OF DEVON (1).

A. (1) Where is Plymouth? (2) What is Plymouth Hoe? (3) Whose statue stands there? (4) Why is the globe by his side? (5) Where did he live? (6) In whose reign? (7) Who was Captain Hawkins? (8) How did Drake become a skilful sailor? (9) What could he do with the sails? (10) How old was he when he joined his cousin? (11) Where was his first sea-fight? (12) Were the English victorious? (13) Did Spain pay him for the property he had lost? (14) What first made him famous? (15) Why could he now choose better crews? (16) Which isthmus did he cross? (17) What did the Indian chief show him? (18) What was Drake's great wish? (19) When did he return to Plymouth? (20) How was he greeted?

B. 1. Substantives to: to do, to sail, brave, to own, quick, to serve, to command, safe, high, good, to enter, to see, to travel.

2. Adjectives to: rock, navy, fame, distance, value, anger, west, friend, gold, health.

3. Other words: during Elizabeth's reign, sailor, he became very fond of him, very small, relation, soon after, a fight between ships, a battleship, in less than a year, he came back, the sailors on a ship, he saw the ocean, able to do all things.

4. Take your map and point to a country, a county, a town, a harbour, an island, a river, an

isthmus. Where are: the Atlantic Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, Spain, Portugal?

5. Write sentences containing the following words: to form part, famous, reign, adventure, vessel, the former, sturdy, profit, attack, valuable, property, crew, skilful, height, view, beseech, entrance, trumpet, anchor.

C. 1. Put in prepositions: (a) This ridge forms part — Plymouth. (b) His statue stands — Plymouth Hoe. (c) He sailed — the globe. (d) He lived — two reigns. (e) He often looked — the ships. (f) Hawkins took a fancy — his cousin. (g) He was engaged — the owner of a vessel. (h) I am surprised — your quickness. (i) The sea-fight took place — the coast of America. (j) He took all he could — the King of Spain. (k) He succeeded — taking some ships. (l) He returned — a year. (m) He chose his crews — the bravest sailors. (n) He was — the head of a party. (o) The height was — the two seas. (p) He came back — a Sunday.

2. *Example*: Plymouth Hoe is a rocky ridge: what is Plymouth Hoe? (a) He was born in *Devonshire*. (b) He lived in the reign of *Elizabeth*. (c) Some ships were in the harbour. (d) He took a fancy to his cousin. (e) His master was surprised at his quickness. (f) He made him mate of his ship. (g) The fleet was off the coast of *America*. (h) The vessels were loaded with *gold*. (i) They entered the harbour on a *Sunday*.

3. *Example*: They call him the Sea King: he is called the Sea King. (a) He did great deeds. (b) The owner of a vessel engaged him. (c) They hoisted the sails. (d) They sank a ship. (e) They told Drake about it. (f) The Indians had felled some trees. (g) Drake had seen the Pacific Ocean. (h) We blew trumpets and beat drums.

D. 1 Captain Hawkins tells us about his young cousin.

2. One of Drake's sailors tells us about a sea-fight with the Spaniards.

3. The Indian chief describes how he met Drake, where they went, and what they saw.

#### XVII. THE SEA KING OF DEVON (2).

A. (1) What had Queen Elizabeth been told? (2) What did she give Drake? (3) What did she say to him? (4) Why did few people know what he intended to do? (5) Did the Spaniards have any idea of his purpose? (6) What was put on board the little fleet? (7) How was Drake going to reach the Pacific? (8) Why was that a dangerous voyage? (9) Who had been the first to see the Pacific? (10) Who sailed on it first? (11) What happened to these? (12) Did the knowledge of it daunt Drake? (13) How long did it take him to reach South America? (14) How long does it now take to cross the Atlantic? (15) How was the weather when they reached the strait of

Magellan? (16) How long did it take them to get through it? (17) Where did he sail then? (18) Why did they get back to the strait? (19) Where did Drake land? (20) Where did he then go?

B. 1. Adjectives to: fame, doubt, danger, Europe, rest, west, pride, south.

2. Substantives to: good, pleasant, to pass, to discover, savage, violent, to die, to know, to command, to freeze, to explore, to enter, true, to believe, safe, long.

3. Other words: he started on his voyage, feed, because of, a safe harbour, at last, going on towards the south, on both sides, all at once, to the south.

4. Opposite to: stormy waters, a natural death, a straight passage, wide, very hot, entrance, a stormy and slow voyage, possible, the extreme north.

5. Take a map and point to Plymouth, the Atlantic Ocean, the mouth of the River Plate, the Strait of Magellan, the Pacific Ocean, the western coast of South America, Cape Horn, the Atlantic Ocean.

6. Draw an island, an isthmus, a strait, a harbour, a cape.

7. Write sentences containing the following words: to intend, sword, purpose, important, doubtful, musician, delay, on account of, violent, knowledge, to perish in the attempt, to proceed, winding, explorer, restless, calm, to overtake, belief, to wreck, basin, to shelter.

C. 1. Write from "Only a few" to "as their own," with the verbs in the present.

2. *Example*: He knew it; he did not know it. (a) They gave up sailing through the strait. (b) Savages killed Magellan. (c) He met with a violent death. (d) They can find a harbour. (e) The wind blew hard. (f) They found a place in which to anchor. (g) The storm drove them to the right. (h) They made their way quickly. (i) He soon overtook me. (j) He threw himself down. (k) He replied at once.

3. *Example*: She said: "I shall require it of thee": she said she would require it of him. (a) He said: "It will be a long voyage." (b) A sailor said: "We shall sail through the strait." (c) Men declared: "The passage is closed up." (d) The Spaniards said: "No man can sail on the Pacific Ocean and live." (e) Drake said: "I know the shortest way." (f) They thought: "We shall be dashed on the rocks." (g) Drake replied: "I have been farther south than any other man."

D. 1. Drake tells Queen Elizabeth what he intends to do.

2. One of Drake's sailors tells us how they sailed through the Strait of Magellan.

3. Drake tells us about Cape Horn.

### XVIII. THE SEA KING OF DEVON (3).

A. (1) How did Drake get much gold? (2) Why did he sail northward? (3) What happened to the "Golden Hind?" (4) Why did the sailors build tents? (5) What was engraved on the brass plate? (6) At

what great island did he touch? (7) Where did he go then? (8) When did he get there? (9) When did he return to Plymouth? (10) How was he welcomed? (11) How long had he not seen his family? (12) Where did the Queen visit him? (13) What did she say about his sword? (14) What did Drake receive from the Queen? (15) What happened to the "Golden Hind?" (16) What may still be seen at Oxford? (17) What did a poet call him?

B. 1. Substantives to: to pass, to see, safe, to possess, to state, to tell, to do, to discover, to greet, to serve, to pass, to travel.

2. Adjectives to: friend, misfortune, fame, pride, noise, care, wonder, silence.

3. Other words: northward, he hoped to find them, the mainland, a hole (in a ship), all the sailors, he made up his mind to cross the ocean, they touched at this island, misfortune, she visited him.

4. Opposite to: he lost sight of the cape, deep water, slender, after a long time, the cliffs disappeared, to blame, earlier, quickly, I remembered it.

5. Take your map and follow Drake's voyage from Cape Horn to Plymouth.

6. Draw a tent, a stout post with a brass plate, a ship with cannons being fired and flags floating from the mast heads.

7. write sentences containing the following words: shore, shallow, to repair, to damage, to

engrave, to last, crowd, to fire, to entrust, to kneel, a belt, poet.

C. 1. *Example*: Drake attacked the ships: the ships were attacked by Drake. (a) They anchored their ships. (b) We built tents. (c) The sailors repaired the ship. (d) They nailed the plate to a post. (e) Drake saw the cliffs. (f) The Queen welcomed the famous sailor. (g) He had delivered up his sword.

2. Finish these sentences: (a) Drake expected to —. (b) The natives were friendly, though —. (c) The plate contained a statement that —. (d) When Drake returned, it was no wonder that—. (e) Before—, the sword must render us a service. (f) The good ship was kept as —.

3. *Example*: He gained wealth by — ships (attack): he gained 'wealth by attacking ships. (a) He spent some time in — for a harbour (search). (b) After — tents, they set to work (build). (c) They made the plate secure by — it to a post (nail). (d) He sailed on, without — anywhere (stop). (e) They showed their joy by — loudly (cheer). (f) She had entrusted a sword to his — (keep). (g) After — his shoulder, she told him to rise (tap).

D. 1. Drake tells us what was done on the coast of North America.

2. A native of Plymouth describes what happened when Drake returned.

3. The feast on board the "Golden Hind."

## XIX. THE SEA KING OF DEVON (4).

A. (1) When did Drake attack the Spaniards again? (2) Why were the people excited? (3) Why did the King of Spain desire to punish England? (4) What did the merchants of London do? (5) How many ships were under Drake's command? (6) Did the Spaniards expect to see him? (7) What did he capture on his way home? (8) Who was present at the famous game of bowls? (9) Why was the man breathless? (10) What news did he bring? (11) How did he know the ships were Spanish? (12) Did Drake set off at once? (13) How did the English sailors fight? (14) What is a fireship? (15) How many ships were captured? (16) Did the King of Spain say that the English had defeated his Armada? (17) Where did Queen Elizabeth go? (18) What were the words on the medal?

B. 1. Adjectives to: power, navy, breath, fear, luck, might, hero.

2. Substantives to: to invade, to visit, high, to attack, to sail, to play.

3. Other words: he fitted out a fleet, he gave trouble to the Spaniards, Drake took a ship, hardly, he saw them clearly, they set sail, on the next day, he terrified them, at last.

4. Opposite to: to disappear, harmed, entirely, nowhere, to go slowly, there is no time to do this, on the day before, he missed the chance, in good condition.

5. Give all the words you know that end in -ful or -less.

6. Write sentences containing the following words: news, to punish, to destroy, to hinder, visitor, to capture, to breathe, fearless, courage, glory, defeat, flame, thanks, to cause, to scatter.

C. 1. *Example*: He brought home *much wealth*: what did he bring home? (a) His object was to *punish* England. (b) Drake appeared *in a Spanish harbour*. (c) He received fresh honours *on his return*. (d) They waited *for what he had to tell them*. (e) They began *to hurry towards the harbour*. (f) The soldiers fought *like lions*. (g) The vessels were in *bad condition*.

2. Put the verbs into the future: (a) He brought it home. (b) He took it from the Spaniards. (c) They fitted out a small fleet. (d) He led his ships among them. (e) It partly paid for fitting out the ships. (f) He could not speak. (g) He struck terror into them. (h) We heard the good news. (i) The medal bore these words.

3. *Example*: I am young', you are 2, he is 3: I am young, you are younger, he is the youngest. (a) He gained much wealth on his first voyage, but 2 on the second. (b) This is an important harbour, but Plymouth is 2; which is 3 harbour in your country? (c) I cannot see the ship plainly, because my eyes are not good; you can see it 2, because your eyes are 2 than mine. (d) Drake did many heroic deeds; which

was 3? (e) The King of Spain had been angry before; he was now 2 still.

D. 1. A London merchant tells us why he is willing to give money for fitting out a fleet.

2. A Spanish captain tells his King about Drake's coming into the Spanish harbour.

3. Lord Howard tells us about the game of bowls.

## XX. THE SEA KING OF DEVON (5).

A. (1) When did Hawkins die? (2) Did he die fighting? (3) When did Drake fall ill? (4) Why did the sailors move silently? (5) Did the doctor believe that Drake would recover? (6) What made Drake feel better? (7) Was he strong enough to walk about? (8) Did he speak again? (9) In what year did he die? (10) Why was he buried at sea? (11) Where did they place his body? (12) Why are Englishmen proud of Drake?

B. 1. Substantives to: victorious, to live, to attend, anxious, silent, to remain.

2. Adjectives to: health, brave, breath, to die, might, lead, wood, fame, power, patriot.

3. Other words: he became ill, he was going to speak, not enough room, he became more famous than the admirals before him, he knew the duties of an admiral, he did not lose courage when defeated.

4. Opposite to : strong, to shout, far, cool, worse, to lie down, a strong wind, to close, above, to lose, mortal, victory.

5. What words would you use if you had to speak about (a) a long voyage, (b) a sea-fight?

6. Write sentences containing these words : to give way, grave, breeze, attendant, tender, faithful, feeble, coffin, volley, to swing, to splash, remains, tomb, sufficient, familiar, to shrink, obstacle, to crush, patriotic.

C. 1. *Example*: He said : I will get up : he said that he would get up. (a) The doctor said : His end is near. (b) Drake declared : The breezes will give me fresh life. (c) They said : He cannot speak. (d) The officers said : We will bury him at sea. (e) The poet declared : The waters are his tomb. (f) The men of England said : We will set up a statue to him.

2. Put in prepositions : (a) They were — the head of a large fleet. (b) They crossed the ocean — a month. (c) The sailors whispered — one another. (d) The sun's rays crept in — his window. (e) He wanted to go — deck. (f) He sank — the doctor's arms. (g) They watched him — nearly an hour. (h) His grave was — the waters of the deep. (i) He was buried three miles — the shore. (j) Drake carried England's glory — a high pitch. (k) He was familiar — the duties of a common sailor. (l) He was a patriot — first — last. (m) All Englishmen are proud — Drake.

3. *Example*: He fell ill: he did not fall ill. (a) His health gave way. (b) The doctor shook his head. (c) Drake lay on his bed. (d) He dropped his coat. (e) He sank into the doctor's arms. (f) He had won great fame. (g) They laid his body on the deck. (h) The guns replied. (i) Drake shrank before the obstacle.

D. 1. A sailor describes the death and the funeral of Drake.

2. A native of Plymouth takes his grandson to the statue of Drake and tells him about that brave sailor.

### XXI. THE RED CORD OF COURAGE.

A. (1) Where do the Indian Hillsmen live? (2) Is it easy to reach their homes? (3) How do they fight? (4) Which virtue do they most admire? (5) How do they do honour to a dead chief? (6) Why were some British troops sent into the hills? (7) Why did they march quickly? (8) Did all remain together? (9) Why did the twelve go around the other side of the boulder? (10) What was on either side and in front of them? (11) How many Hillsmen were in ambush? (12) Of what kind was their cover? (13) Did the officer want the sergeant and his men to charge the Hillsmen? (14) Were they afraid to do so? (15) How many reached the top? (16) What did their comrades find when they reached the foot of the rock?

B. 1. Substantives to: modest, loyal, heroic, to pass, to hesitate, to live, brave.

2. Adjectives to: trouble, height, terror, Britain, America, India.

3. Other words: quick, rarely, soldier, he was killed in battle, they showed him the highest honour, dale, on both sides, the greater part of the troops, a very large piece of rock, altogether, there was only one way out, they did not understand the signal, companion.

4. Opposite to: friend, never, often, they fight in the open, cautious, they left the ravine, just behind them.

5. Write sentences containing these words: stubborn, ambush, interior, custom, wrist, cord, to pay tribute, valley, boulder, flat, to defend, to retreat, to hesitate, mistaken, to toil, to struggle, to wound.

6. Draw a map of the country, containing a main valley, a narrow ravine, a pass, a river, boulders. Show where the main body marched, and where the Hillsmen lay in ambush.

C. 1. *Example*: The enemies attacked them: they were attacked by the enemies. (a) One can reach their homes by a few passes. (b) They showed respect to their chief. (c) They are tying a cord around his wrist. (d) The enemy harassed our brave troops. (e) The breastwork defended the Hillsmen. (f) We sent down a heavy fire. (g) The savage men had

thrown down the twelve bodies. (h) Who does not admire such bravery?

2. Read the story aloud, using the present for the past, where this is possible. (A small body. . . is sent. . . has been making. . . leads, etc.).

3. *Example*: The troops fight (brave): they fight bravely. (a) They attack (swift). (b) It was shut in by hills (entire). (c) They harassed our men (continual). (d) We charged (reckless). (e) They were wounded (terrible). (f) They defended themselves (stubborn).

D. 1. A Hillsman returns to his home and tells his wife how he and others of his tribe heard that British troops were marching towards them; how they harassed these troops; and how they killed twelve of them.

2. A friend of the men who fell in the fight writes a letter to the dead man's brother, telling him how he met with his death.

3. The officer in command speaks to his troops, praising the bravery of the sergeant and his men, which even the Hillsmen had admired.

## XXII. GRACE DARLING.

A. (1) What are the Farne Islands? (2) Where are they? (3) What was Mr Darling? (4) What was his daughter's name? (5) When did she hear

cries of distress? (6) What did she see at dawn? (7) To whom did she then go? (8) Why did he not start off at once? (9) What could Grace now see on the wreck? (10) What did she determine to do? (11) Did her father still hesitate? (12) Was it easy to row? (13) What did they see as they approached the wreck? (14) Why did they not both land? (15) Could you have managed the boat? (16) Where were the poor people taken? (17) How long did they remain there? (18) What had happened to Mrs Dawson's children? (19) What kind of a vessel was it? (20) Why had it become unmanageable? (21) How many were saved? (22) How many sailors? (23) What happened to the rest? (24) What do you think of Grace Darling?

B. 1. Substantives to: to keep, to remain, to hesitate, careful, to sail.

2. Adjectives to: danger, to live, to manage, person, skill, comfort, violence, use, fame.

3. Other words: at dawn, they approached, after trying vainly, while he did so, he managed to land, of no use, they let down a boat.

4. Opposite to: the north-east, at dusk, dead, she was doubtful, careful, impossible, useful, helpful, manageable, their lives were saved.

5. Write sentences containing these words: lighthouse, at daybreak, to rescue, tide, to row, person, steamer, steam, to lower, passenger.

6. Draw a lighthouse on a rock, with a wreck in the distance; a steamer and sailing-vessel; Grace Darling rowing her boat.

C. 1. *Example*: His daughter lived with him: who lived with him? (a) Grace heard *cries of distress*. (b) There is a wreck *on Longstone Island*. (c) Her father *hesitated*. (d) She looked *at the wreck*. (e) She managed her boat *skilfully*. (f) The children *were killed by the waves*. (g) The steamer sailed *between Hull and Dundee*. (h) It was not known *how many lives were lost*. (i) The name of *Grace Darling* has become famous.

2. *Example*: The remains of a wreck were seen by her: she saw the remains of a wreck. (a) Nine were rescued. (b) The boat was well managed by her. (c) It was not dashed to pieces by the waves. (d) They were placed in the boat by Mr Darling and his daughter. (e) The boat had been lowered by some sailors.

3. *Example*: She got into the boat: she says she will get into the boat; she said she would get into the boat. (a) The tide was rising. (b) She went to the window. (c) It gave them courage. (d) They held on to the ship. (e) She made them as comfortable as she could. (f) The storm became less violent. (g) She left her bed. (h) The boat was let down. (i) Many lives were lost.

D. 1. Mr Darling tells us how his daughter came to him one morning, why he went with her, and what they found at Longstone Island.

2. Mrs Dawson writes a letter, in which she tells her sister how she went on board at Hull with her children, how a storm arose, how her children were killed, and how she was saved.

## The Words in the First and Second English Books arranged according to their Meaning.

1. World; 1.A. Land and Water; 1.B. By Land and Water;  
1.C. Place; 1.D. Movement; 1.E. Time; 1.F. Weather;  
1.G. Hot and Cold.
- 2.A. Whole and Part, Number, etc.; 2.B. Size, Shape, etc.;  
2.C. Colours.
3. Living Beings; 3.A. Man; 3.B. Body; 3.C. Clothes; 3.D. Animals.
4. Plants.
5. Food.
6. Metals; 6.A. Money, etc.; 6.B. Possession.
7. Actions.
8. Voice; 8.A. Sound.
9. House; 9.A. Family; 9.B. School.
10. Thought.
11. Temper; 11.A. Love; 11.B. Hope; 11.C. Joy; 11.D. Beauty;  
11.E. Virtue; 11.F. Patriotism.

- 
1. **World**: God. Globe, earth. Nature (natural).
- 1.A. **Land and water**: Map. Continent (mainland),  
country (region, county, province). City, town  
(mayor), village.
- Mountain range, mountain, ridge, pass, hill(-y),  
rock(-y), cliff, boulder. Plain (flat). Valley,  
dale, ravine, gully.

River, stream, torrent, brook. Bridge. Pond, well. Earth, soil, ground. Dry (*v.a.*), dust(-y), mud(-dy). Ocean. sea. Tide, wave, billow, foam. Coast, shore (to land), beach, sand; seaside. Cape, seaport, harbour, haven. Channel, passage, strait. Isthmus, island.

Water, drop. Ice; steam (boiler). Flow, pour, spill, splash. Damp (*s.a.*), wet (*a.v.*), soak.

1.B. **By land and water:** Travel(-ler), journey (*s.v.*), voyage (*s.v.*).

Road(-side), highway, street (pave), lane. Car, carriage, wagon(-er); to drive (*s.v.*); wheel.

Railway station(-master), booking office (clerk, ticket), waiting-room, platform, porter. Train, carriage, class. Luggage (label).

Ship (vessel), steamer, steamship (engine, boiler), boat (oar, row). Sail (*s.v.*) (set, trim), mast, anchor. On board, on deck; cabin.

Seaman(-ship). Captain, crew (officer, mate, sailor, cabin boy); passenger. Cargo. Float, cross, cruise.

Leak (*s.v.*), wreck, drown; lighthouse (keeper) rescue.

1.C. **Place:** Space, room, spot. Here, there; every where, nowhere. Inside (interior), within, outside (outermost). Top (cover, *s.v.*), middle bottom. Front, back. Side (beside), corner, edge. Right, left. Direction: east(-ern), west(-ern), south (-ern, -erly, -ernmost, -ward), north(-ern, -ward).

Distant (distance); away, off. Near (neighbourhood), close; pass, go by; far (afar). Approach towards; retreat from. Home(-ward), at home; outlandish.

Up (upper), above; down. Rise (arise), ascend, climb, spring up; lift, hoist. High (height); low (lower, *s.v.*). Fall, tumble, drop, plunge, sink. Over(-hang); under, beneath. On (to); off.

In, into; out, out of. Enter (entrance); go out, leave, outlet, way out.

There; back(-wards). Come, go. Start, set off; go on, proceed, forward (ahead); reach, arrive; stay return (*s.v.*).

Through, across, against, opposite. Pass(-age), cross. Along, around (round), about; turn (*s.v.*).

Before, behind. Hide, conceal, disappear, lose (loss). Search (*s.v.*), seek, explore (-er). Find (out), discover(-er, -y). Appear(-ance).

1.D. **Movement**: Move; stir. Walk, step (*s.v.*), march, run, jump, leap; ramble. Crawl, creep, climb, hop; dart, rush; reel.

Ride, gallop; drive. Swim, float; glide; slip. Fly (flight).

Speed. Fast, quick(-ness), rapid, swift. Haste (-en, -y), hurry (*s.v.*; hurriedly). Slow; outstrip, overtake. Meet.

1.E. **Time**: Year (leap-). Season: spring(-time), summer, autumn, winter. Month; week; day (week-);

hour, half an hour; minute; moment, instant.  
Date; birthday; Christmas. Clock (tick), watch;  
one o'clock. Timetable.

Daybreak (dawn), sunrise, morning, noon (midday),  
afternoon, sunset, dusk, evening, night, mid-  
night.

Past (long ago), present (now), future. Last year,  
this year, next year. Yesterday, to-day, to-  
morrow. History; happen.

Early, late; delay (*s.v.*). Already, not yet.

Begin(-ning, -ner), start; go on (continue, -ual);  
end, finish, stop. First, then (thereupon), at  
last (finally).

Sometimes, now and then; rarely, seldom; frequ-  
ent, often; generally; always.

Again; repeat. \*Common, usual, ordinary, familiar;  
custom, habit, fashion; proverb. Strange,  
curious (curiosity), odd(-looking), queer.

Now, at once, immediately, in a moment (an  
instant), soon. Suddenly. No longer; never.

Before; during (in the course of), while, mean-  
while; after(-wards). Since; till (until).

Age: young, new (newspaper); old.

Greet(-ing): good-morning, good-night, good-bye.

How do you do? Hallo! Welcome.

1. F. **Weather**: Clear, bright, fine, dull; wet, storm(-y).  
Dew, mist(-y), rain (*s.v.*), shower, snow. Cloud, fog.

Air, blow (*v.*), wind, breeze, gale. Lightning, thunder.

Sky, horizon. Sun(-ny, -light, -rise, -set), moon(-light), star. Barometer.

1.G. **Hot and cold:** Hot, heat (*s.v.*), warm(-th); burn, singe, melt. Match (strike), fire; flame, smoke (*s.v.*), ashes.

Fire(-place, -light, -side); coal, tongs.

Cool, cold; freeze (frost), ice.

2. A. **Whole and part, number, etc.:** All, everybody; band, company, party, crowd. All, everything; heap, lot, mass, flock; row, list. The whole; the rest (relic, remains). Part, share (*s.v.*). Choose; election, vote.

Together, gather, meet; scatter. Join; desert.

Single, alone, lonely; bit, piece, trifle, block (wood). Perfect, sound; damaged.

Altogether, entirely; mostly; partly.

Each, every (-body, -thing), some(-body, -thing), few, several, many, more (least); none, nothing.

Both, dozen. Quarter, half. Equal (un-).

First (foremost), next, last (final); to follow.

Example, instance, pattern; except. Chief, main; extreme; important: especially. Also, besides.

To count. Add (addition). Subtract(-ion). Divide (division). Multiply (multiplication); once, twice, three times.

Much, a good deal, plenty; very, handsomely, extremely; rather; only; little, a handful.

Too much; enough, sufficient, quite; just, nearly, almost; scarcely, hardly. To satisfy; contented.

2.B. **Size, shape, etc.:** Kind, sort, stuff; condition; consist, form. Big, large, great, huge, unbound-  
ed (bounds); goodsized; moderate; little, small,  
wee, tiny. Fat, stout, thick; thin, slender.

Long(lenght), short; wide, narrow. Inch, foot,  
yard, mile. Straight (line); round (ball). High,  
low. Deep, shallow.

Sharp. Flat. Plain. Smooth.

Heavy, light; pound; weigh(-t).

Hard, firm, stiff; soft.

Full (fill; brimful); empty (*a.v.*). Hollow; hole.

Same, equal (un-); other, different. Like, so, thus.

Same; change (ex-). Father.

2.C. **Colours:** Red, yellow, blue, green, brown; white  
(chalk), grey, black.

Pale, light; dark; speckled. Hue. Picture, paint (*v.s.*).

Light: bright (-ness), clear, dark(ness), dull. Shine,  
glitter, gleam, twinkle.

Sun(-light, -shine), moon(-light, -shine), star;  
beam, ray.

Lamp. Shadow, shade (shady).

3. **Living beings:** Creature, animal, human being.

3.A. **Man:** Nation (native), tribe. People, folks, person.

Man, woman; gentleman, lady. Boy (lad),

girl. Child (-ish), baby; grow (growth), bred; age. Fellow, neighbour. Name (*s.v.*); call, be called.

3.B. **Body**: Head (nod, wag, shake; behead), trunk, limbs. Figure. Flesh, skin, blood (to bleed). Tremble, quiver.

Face, forehead (brow). Eye, lid; see (sight), regard, behold, peep, look, stare; view, scene; blind; cry, weep, tear. Nose (blow, handkerchief), breath (-less, to breathe), smell. Cheek, pale, red. Ear, hear, deaf. Mouth, eat, drink, blow, pant, snap (*s.v.*). Lip, kiss, whistle (*s.v.*), smile (*s.v.*), laugh (*s.v.*); voice (see below). Jaw, tooth(-brush), bite (*s.v.*). Tongue. Chin, dimple.

Hair(-brush, -dresser), fair, dark, golden, brown, black, grey, white; to cut. Beard (grey-bearded), moustache; to shave (barber), clean-shaven. To bristle.

Neck, throat (to swallow). Back. Shoulder (shrug).

Breast. Heart(-y)

Arm (stretch, wave), wrist, hand (touch, stroke), finger (ring); point, show; sign (signal, *s.v.*).

Leg (two-legged, front legs, hind-legs), knee (kneel), foot (four-footed), kick (*s.v.*). Lap.

Lie, lay; sit (seat); stand (by-stander).

Health(-y), well, ill; suffer. Headache. Wound (*s.v.*).

Doctor; recover.

Live (alive, life). Grow (growth); perish, die (dead, death); drown, starve, kill. Coffin, bury, grave (tomb), funeral. Mortal remains; immortal. Inherit.

3.C. **Clothes**: To clothe, to wear; dress (*s.v.*), put on, undress. Rag (ragged). Hat, cap; crown. Coat; pocket; handkerchief. Collar. Shwal. Belt, buckle, unbuckle. Boot, shoe (shoemaker); sole (*s.v.*), re-sole. Sew, needle (pin), thread. Workbasket.

3.D. **Animals**: Dog (hound), bark, bite, guard. Cat (puss), kitten; purr, scratch; mouse (trap), rat. Horse, harness; drive, ride; gallop. Donkey (ass). Ox (beef), cow (milk, cream, butter, cheese). Sheep (bleat; mutton; wool, wollen; fold), lamb. Hare, rabbit, squirrel; fox, wolf, bear; lion. Grawl, roar. Den.

Bird: beak (bill), wing (fly, flight, feather(-y) (ruffle), leg (hop), tail. Nest, egg; cage. Chirp, sing, twitter.

Farmyard (famer): fowl, cock (crow, cock-a-doodle-doo), hen (cackle, cluck), duck (quack, waddle), goose. Sparrow, swallow, lark, linnet, thrush, dove; peacock, parrot; crow (caw), eagle.

Fish (fisherman), herring; swim.

Insect: bee(-hive, -sting; to buzz; honey), butterfly (feeler), ladybird. Cricket (chirp), grasshopper. Fly, spider (cobweb), gnat. Glow-worm; worm.

4. **Plants**: Seed (to sow), plant (*s.v.*); bush(-y), hedge, tree, moss. Root, trunk, bough, branch, top. Bud, leaf. Bloom, blossom, flower (petal, stalk); smell, fragrant(-ance). Park, garden, bower; fence; pick, gather, bunch. Fresh, water (*s.v.*); droop, wither. Rose (thorn), violet, tulip, peony.
- Apple(-tree), cherry(-tree), plum(-tree), pear(-tree).  
Fruit, ripe (to ripen); peel, (*s.v.*).
- Nut, shell, kernel; hazelnut, walnut. Harvest.  
Forest, wood (woodland).
- Oak (acorn). Evergreen. Moss.
- Meadow, grass (blade; hay; to mow, new-mown),  
buttercup, daisy. Hedge.
- Field (plough, *s.v.*), corn (straw), wheat, potato.  
Axe (to fell); wood(-en); board, plank, post.
5. **Food**: Appetite, hunger (hungry); starve. Cook (*s.v.*),  
kitchen, eat(-able), bite (*s.v.*), swallow; feed,  
nourish. Provisions. Bread (miller, baker;  
loaf), biscuit, cake. Porridge. Butter (fat).  
Cheese, honey, jam; grocer.
- Meat (beef, mutton, lamb; butcher); sauce. Egg.  
Pudding. Homemade. Sweet (sugar), bitter.
- Meal, feast. Breakfast, luncheon, (to dine dining-  
room), supper. Dish, plate; spoon, knife, fork.
- Thirst(-y). Liquor; drink, sip. Water, milk; tea  
(-pot), coffee; beer, wine. Cup (saucer), glass  
(brim, brimful); jug, bottle; keg, cask.

6. **Metals, etc.:** Gold(-en) (goldsmith), silver, copper iron (rust, -y), lead(-en), tin (tinker), brass. Crystal; glass. Coal. Jewel: diamond, emerald, ruby.
- 6.A. **Money, etc.:** Sovereign (£1), pound, half-sovereign (10s.). Half-a-crown (2s. 6d.), florin (2s.), shilling (1s.), sixpence (6d.), threepence (3d.). Penny (1d.), halfpenny ( $\frac{1}{2}$ d.), farthing ( $\frac{1}{4}$ d.). Coin; purse. Rich (riches), wealth(-y); cost(-ly), value (valuable), treasure.  
Buy, sell; price, profit; earn, spend, spare; tip. Shop (*s.v.*), wares; merchant, clerk; pedlar, pack. Poor; beg (beggar).
- 6.B. **Possession:** Own (*a.v.*; -er); belong. Possess(-ion); property.  
Want (*v.s.*), need (*s.v.*), require.  
Use (*s.v.*; -ful, -less), employ. Instrument; by means of. Fit out, supply; ready. Value(-able); worth(-less).
7. **Actions:** Action, active, activity; make, perform. Work(*s.v.*), toil (*s.v.*), job; do (deed); hard, difficult(-y), troublesome; light, ease(-y), simple. Industry(-ious), busy (business); idle(-ness), lazy. Tired; fresh (re-).  
Strong (strenght), sturdy; might(-y, al — y), force, power (-ful, -less). Firm, hard; weak, feeble; bend, break, burst.  
Can (cannot), able (un-), possible (im-), manage (-able, un — able); fitted.

- Attempt, try ; get on, succeed ; turn out ; fail, vain.
- Care(-ful, -less, -lessness), caution (-ious) ; heed (*s.v.*), attend to, attention (-tive).
- Put, lay, set. Open (*a.v.*; -ing), spread ; close, shut. Fast(-en), fix ; firm. Bind, tie (un-) ; string, cord, rope. Lock (*s.v.* ; un-).
- Throw, toss, dash, cast ; catch. Hang, swing ; stretch. Rub, stroke ; shake, stir.
- Bring, fetch send. Draw, drag, lead, pull. Hold, carry, bear ; load (*s.v.*). Cling.
- Hit, tap, knock (*s.v.*), strike, flog, crush ; blow ; stick, hammer, nail (*s.v.*).
- Cut, scratch, scrape ; scissors, knife, pin. Carve (statue), engrave. Fell (axe).
- Give (gift), deliver, present ; thank (-s, -ful). Offer (*s.v.*) ; accept, receive. Keep, give back, restore, return, give up.
- Take, seize, catch, capture. Hunt(-er) ; trap, net. Hit ; miss, fail.
- Prison (im-, -er) ; escape, free(-dom). Get rid of.
8. **Voice** : Say, speak (speech), talk (*s.v.*), utter (words) ; chatter, gabble ; dumb. Call, cry (*s.v.*), shout (*s.v.*), exclaim.
- Exclamation : ah ! oh ! all right ! dear me ! oh dear ! alas ! Sigh, groan, roar. Silent (-ence) ; hush !
- Tell (tale), relate, recite ; story, fairytale, poem (verse ; poet).

Declare, state(-ment) ; explain ; deny. Interrupt.  
 Beg, beseech, plead ; promise. Bid, order (*s.v.*),  
 command (*s.v.* ; -er). Allow, leave (*s.*) ; give  
 way. Suggest, advise (advice), warn(-ing), persu-  
 ade ; agree, consent.

Demand, ask, inquire ; question ; answer (*s.v.*),  
 reply (*s.v.*).

Sing (song), chorus ; whistle (*s.v.*).

Hear, listen ; deaf. Report.

8.A. **Sound** : Noise (noisy) ; loud (aloud), quiet, still.  
 Clear, shrill ; jingle, tinkle, ring ; crackle, rustle.

Echo (*s.v.* ; re-). Bang ! crash ! jerk ! clatter !  
 rattle !

Music(-al, -ian.). Bell ; horn ; trumpet ; violin.

9. **House, etc.** : Build(-ing) ; live, haunt. Castle,  
 palace ; church, cathedral. Cottage. Tent,  
 den. Home (at home) ; indoors, out-of-doors.  
 Diningroom ; hall. Kitchen, pantry. Roof ; cellar.  
 Upstairs, downstairs.

Bedroom (garret) ; bed (cradle, sheet). Awake (*v.a.*),  
 wake up ; fresh (refresh). Stay up. Bedtime ;  
 tired, weary ; go to bed. Sleep (*s.v.*), asleep ;  
 rest (*s.v.*, -less) ; dream (*s.v.*).

Floor, wall, ceiling.

Window (pane), shutter, door (tap, knock). Key  
 (keyhole), lock (unlock).

Table, chair (seat, bench) ; bed ; mat, rug. Broom  
 (sweep), brush (*s.v.*).

Bag, basket, sack ; box, chest; contain (contents).

Basin, water, soap, wash (*s.v.*). Clean, pure  
dirt(-y), mud(-dy).

Hotel, inn; host, invite; guest, visit(-or, re-);  
stranger.

Master, mistress, servant (serve, service); cook,  
maid; attendant; engage.

9.A. **Family**: Relation, kinsman. Grandparents(-father,  
-mother); parents (father, mother); brother,  
sister; child (son, daughter); grandchild (-son,  
daughter). Uncle, aunt; cousin; nephew, niece.  
Husband, wife; marry, marriage, wedding; father-  
mother-, brother-, sister-, son-, daughter-in-law.  
Elder, eldest; younger, youngest.

9.B. **School, etc.**: Teach(-er), schoolmaster; learn, lesson.  
Class(-room), school(-room); desk. Time-Table.  
Blackboard, chalk, duster. Read, book; page,  
sentence, word, syllable, letter.  
Write; lead pencil, pen (ink); copybook, exercise book.  
Letter (note; postcard), paper (fold), envelope,  
stamp; letterbox, post office; postman.

10. **Thought**: Think, thought(-ful), consider. Idea, opinion.  
Explain, show; mean; attend (attention, -tive);  
interest(-ing); understand. Notice (*s.v.*), perceive.  
Why? because, therefore. Cause, reason (-able).  
Object, purpose. Intend, decide, determine; judge.  
Memory, remember(-brance), remind; forget(-ful,  
-fulness).

Sure, certain; of course. Look, seem, appear (apparently). Believe (belief), trust, suppose; probably. Doubt (*s.v.*; -ful), hesitate (-tion); perhaps. Guess; puzzle, riddle.

True (truly), truth, real (really), exactly; false. Right, wrong. Mistake(-n); confused.

Know(-ledge, unknown), wise (wisdom), clever (-ness), intelligent, skill (skilful), bright(-ness).

Folly, fool(-ish), silly, stupid, thickheaded, awkward.

Imagine, fancy. Fairy(-land). Wonder (*s.v.*; -ful), amazed, surprise.

11. **Temper**: Good-natured; ill-tempered, stubborn. Feel (-ing), spirit. Inclined. To treat.

Calm, quiet; excite, thrill; lively.

11.A. **Love**: Love (*s.v.*), beloved; treasure (*s.v.*); dear, darling; fond, to long; like. To devote.

Friend(-ly), kind(-ness, -hearted), faithful, loyal(-ty); companion, comrade. Comfort (*s.v.*). Entrust.

Gentle, soft, tender, tame.

Help (*s.v.*; -er, -ful, -less), assist(-ance), support (un—ed).

Enemy; attack (*s.v.*), quarrel, strife, struggle, fight (*s.v.*); mock, spite.

Violent (-ence), rude, fierce, savage.

Harm (*s.v.*; unharmed), hurt, damage (repair), spoil, disable, destroy; harass, hinder; obstacle.

11.B. **Hope**: Hope (*s.v.*; -ful), desire (*s.v.*), wish (*s.v.*); expect, wait. Keen, eager.

Fear (*s.v.*; -ful), afraid, disheartened, shrink, daunt, fright, scare, terror, terrify, terrible, dreadful, fearful.

Danger(-ous); warn(-ing); guard, shelter (*s.v.*), rescue; secure, safe(-ty).

11.C. **Joy**: Joy(-ful), enjoy, rejoice; glad; merry (mirth, merriment, merriness); delight (*s.v.*), smile, laugh.

Cheer (*s.v.*), cheerful(-ness); contented (contentment). Please (pleasure, pleasant).

Grave, earnest, serious. Anxious (anxiety); worry; trouble (*s.v.*; -some).

Sad(-ness), mourn(-ful), cast down, sorry (sorrow), regret (*s.v.*), suffer, distress (*s.v.*), lonely.

Weep (tear), cry; sigh, groan, grumble.

Anger (angry).

Happy (-iness, un-), fortune (mis-), fortunate (un-), luck (-y, -less); chance, odds; mishap.

Fun(ny), wit, amuse; party, festival.

Game, play(-er, thing); ball (snow-), bowls, nine-pins, kite; skate.

Dance (*s.v.*). Fairytale. Circus, clown.

Smoke (*s.v.*), tobacco, pipe.

11.D. **Beauty**: Beautiful, splendid (splendour), fine, grand, handsome, lovely, fair, pretty, sweet, delicate, nice (-looking), pleasant (un-), agreeable, comfortable (un-). To adorn.

Admire (admiration); attract.

Ugly (ugliness).

11. E. **Virtue**: Right, wrong. Duty; ought to. Praise (*s.v.*), reward (*s.v.*), credit. Fault, cheat; complain(-t); blame, scold; punish (police, -man), culprit; excuse, overlook; ashamed.
- Good(-ness; better, best, noble, pure; hero(-ic). Bad (worse, worst), good-for-nothing; rogue, villain.
- Modest(-y), proud (pride), boast(-ful), self-important; to give oneself airs.
- Polite, bow (*s.v.*), oblige; rude.
- Brave(-ry), courage, fearless, reckless; dare, volunteer; adventure(-r); coward.
- Honour (*s.v.*, -able) (confer), respect (*s.v.*; -able), reverence; fame (famous), glory; pay tribute.
- Knight(-hood). Medal.
- 11.F. **Patriotism**: Patriot(-ic). Monarch; king (royal), queen; reign (*s.v.*); throne, crown. Court(-ier); subject; loyal(-ty). Republic, president. Flag.
- War (warrior), peace.
- Army; troops, soldier; officer, general, captain, lieutenant, sergeant. March, invade (-er); attack (*s.v.*), charge. Guard, defend; ambush, breastwork; reinforce. Fight (*s.v.*), battle; win, victory (-ious), lose, defeat. Shoot, cannon (ball), gun (bullet), volley. Sword (scabbard).
- Navy (naval); crew, sailor; officer, admiral, commander, captain, mate. Fleet, battleship (man-of-war), flagship. To board.
-

VOCABULARY

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

## SÕNASTIK.

Järgmine sõnastik sisaldab sõnu, mis ei leidu esimeses raamatus (*First English Book*).

Klambrites olevad numbrid osutavad lugemispalasid ja märkusi.

Märk ~ tähendab: 1) et eelmist rasvaselt trükitud ingliskeelset sõna tuleb korrata, näit.: **earnest**; in ~ = **in earnest**; 2) et selle märgile järgnev muutelõpp ehk liide tuleb eeloleva jämedalt trükitud ingliskeelse sõna külge liita, näit.: **thank**; ~ful = **thankful**.

Sõnade hääldamise juures tuleb järgmist tähele panna: rõhumärk ' seisab rõhutava silbi algul; märk \* tähendab, et sõna lõpul olevat r-i vahel hääldatakse, vahel aga mitte (vaata seletus r-ist hääld. õpet., *First English Book*).

v. = verb (tegusõna); s. = substantive (nimisõna); a. = adjective (omadussõna); adv. = adverb (määrsõna).

**accept** [æk'sept], vastu võtma, saama.

**account** [ə'kaunt], on ~ of, arvesse võttes, silmas pidades, tõttu, pärast.

**acorn** ['eikɔ:n], (tamme-)tõru.

**across** [ə'krɔ:(j)s], (risti) üle, põigi(-ti).

**action** [ækʃn], tegevus, talitus; (15,18) võitlus, lahing.

**active** ['æktiv], virk, elav, agar.

**activity** [æk'tiviti], virkus, jne. (vaata eelpool); **wanting in his usual** ['ju:ʒuəl] ~ (13,33), mitte nii virk kui harilikult.

**admiral** ['ædmirəl], admiral.

**admiration** [ædmi'reiʃn], imetlemine.

**admire** [əd'maiə\*], imetlema.

**adorn** [əd'ɔ:n], ilustama, kaunistama, ehtima.

- adventure** [əd'ventʃə\*], (õnne-) juhtumine.
- adventurer** [əd'ventʃərə\*], õnnekütt, juhtumise-otsija.
- advice** [əd'vaɪs], s., nõu(-andmine).
- advise** [əd'vaɪz], v., nõu andma.
- Africa** ['æfrɪkə], Aafrika.
- African** ['æfrɪkən], aafrika-, aafriklane.
- aft** [ɑ:ft], taha, tagapoole.
- afterwards** [ɑ:ftəwədz], pärast, hiljem.
- age** [eɪdʒ], vanadus, ajajärk.
- agree** [ə'grɪ:], kokku leppima.
- agreeable** [ə'grɪəbl], mõnus, armas, lahke.
- ahead** [ə'hed], edasi, ette, ettepoole.
- airs** [eəz], **put on ~**, ennast uhkeks tegema, nina püsti ajama.
- almighty** [ɔ:l'maɪtɪ], kõigevägevam.
- almost** ['ɔ:ɪlməʊst], peaaegu.
- amazed** [ə'meɪzd], kohkunud, hirmunud.
- ambush** ['æmbʊʃ], luuramine, varitsemine; **lie in ~**, salaja valvama, varitsema.
- America** [ə'merɪkə], Ameerika.
- American** [ə'merɪkən], ameerika-, ameeriklane.
- amuse** [ə'mju:z], lõbustama, huvitama, lõbu (meelehääd) tundma; **he had been ~d** (7,9), ta olnud huvitatud.
- anchor** ['æŋkə\*], s., ankur; a., ankrusse panema, ankruma.
- Antarctic** ['ænt'ɑ:ktɪk], lõunabana ligiduses olev; **the ~ Ocean** [ouʃn], Lõuna-Jäämeri.
- anxiety** [æŋ'zaiətɪ], rahutus, hirm.
- anxious** ['æŋkʃəs], rahutu kartlik; adv. ~ly, kartlikult, rahutult.
- anybody** ['enɪbədɪ], keegi; (jaatlauses) igäiks.
- Appalachian** [æpə'leɪtʃɪən], appalaakia-; **the ~ Mountains**, Appalaakia-mäed (Ameerikas).
- apparently** [ə'pær(ə)ntli], nähtavasti.
- appearance** [ə'piərəns], välimus, nägemus.
- apply** [ə'plai], pöörduma (k-gi poole palvega jne.); **he ~d to Spain to pay him**, ta palus Hispaanialt rahatasu.
- approach** [ə'prəʊtʃ], lähenema.
- Arctic** ['ɑ:ktɪk], põhjanaba ligi olev; **the ~ Ocean**, Põhja-Jäämeri.
- arise** [ə'raɪz], tõusma, algama.
- Armada** [ɑ:'meɪdə\*], armaada (sõjariistadega varustatud laevastik).
- army** [ɑ:mi], sõjavägi.
- arose** [ə'rouz], vaata **arise**.
- ascend** [ə'send], üles minema.
- Asia** ['eɪʃə], Aasia.
- ass** [æs], eesel.
- assist** [ə'sɪst], toetama, abiks olema.
- assistance** [ə'sɪstəns], abi.
- Atlantic** [ət'læntɪk], **the ~**, Atlandi meri.
- attack** [ə'tæk], s., pealetungimine, v., peale tungima.
- attempt** [ə'tem(p)t], s., katse, püüe; v., katsuma, püüdma.
- attend** [ət'tend], tähele panema; **to ~ to** (12,13) hoolitsema, hoolt kandma.
- attendant** [ət'tendənt], abi(-line).
- attention** [ət'tenʃn], tähelepanu.

attentive [ə'tentiv], tähelepanelik.  
 attract [ə'trækt], (külge) tõm-  
 bama; ~ attention, tähelepanu  
 äratama.

backwards ['bækwɔdz], tagasi.

bade [beid], vaata bid.

Balboa [bæl'boʊə], vaata 17,22.

band [tænd], kogu, hulk, ~ of  
 music (17,13), mängukoor, or-  
 kester.

bang [bæŋ], goes ~ (12,42),  
 ütleb „pomm“.

Barbary ['bɑ:bəri], metslaste-  
 (barbaaride-) maa.

barber ['bɑ:bə\*], metslane, bar-  
 baar.

barometer [bæ'rɒmitə\*], õhu-  
 mõõtja.

basin [beisn], pesukauss; (17,52),  
 merenurk, laht, jõenäva.

battle [bætl], võitlus, lahing.

battleship ['bætlʃip], sõjalaev,  
 lahingulaev.

bay [beɪ], merelaht.

beer [biə\*], õlu.

behead [bi'hed], tapma, pead maha  
 lõõma (raiuma).

behold [bi'hould], vaatama, sil-  
 mama.

being [bi:ŋ], olend, olevus.

belief [bi'li:f], usk.

belt [bɛlt], vöö.

Bennett ['benit], vaata 28.

beseech [bi'si:tʃ], (appi) hüüdma,  
 paluma.

beside [bi'said], kõrval, juures.

besides [bi'saidz], pealegi, peale  
 (mun).

besought [bi'sɔ:t], vaata beseech.

Bess ['bes], vaata 1,30.

Betty ['beti], vaata 27,2.

bid [bid], ütleva, käskima.

bill [bil], nokk.

Bill [bil], Villu; vaata 10,2.

billow ['bilou], (suur) laine, müür-  
 laine.

billowy ['bilouɪ], lainetav, tõusev.

Biscay ['biskeɪ], Biskai-laht  
 (18,22,23).

Blake [bleik], vaata 31.

blame [bleim], laitma; you only  
 (alone) are to ~ (5,18), see on  
 su oma süü, sa oled ise süüdi.

bleat [bli:t], määgima.

bleed [bli:d], verd jooksmas.

block [blɒk], plokk, pakk jne.;  
 ~s of wood (8,6), puuhald.

blood [blʌd], veri.

blow [blou], puhuma; löök, hoop.

board [bɔ:d], on ~, laevalael.

board [bɔ:d], v., laeva küljed  
 kõrvuti seadma, juure sõitma  
 (laevaga) (19,33).

boast [bəʊst], hooplema, kiitlema.

boastful ['bəʊstf(ʊ)l], hooplev.

body ['bɒdi], vägi (21,22).

boiler ['bɔ:ilə\*], aurukatel.

bottom ['bɒtəm], põhi.

boulder ['bəʊldə\*], (rändav) kivi-  
 rünk, räpsukivi.

bound [baʊnd], piir.

bow [bau], v., kummardama;  
 kummardus; low ~, sügav  
 kummardus.

Bow Church ['bəʊ'tʃ:ɪʃ], kirik  
 Londonis.

bower [bəʊə\*], lehtmaja.

bowl [baʊl], keegel; to play  
 at ~, keegelt mängima.

brass [brɑ:s], (valge)vask, prongs.

brave [breɪv], vahva, tubli.

bravery ['breɪvri], vahvus.

breast [brest], rind.

breastwork ['brestwɜ:k], rinna-  
 kaitse(-tugi) (21,27).

- breath** [breθ], hingeõhk; **be out of** ~, hingetu olema.  
**breathe** [bri:ð], hingama.  
**breathless** ['breθlis], hingetu.  
**bred** [bred], üleskasvanud, üleskasvatud; minev. kesks. aegsõnast.  
**breed** [brid], üleskasvatama.  
**breeze** [bri:z], tuule õhk (-hoog), paras tuul.  
**Brick** [brik], vaata 27.  
**bright** [braɪt], selge; selgemõistusega, arukas, tark.  
**brightness** ['braɪtnɪs], selgus, mõistus, tarkus.  
**brim** [brɪm], äär, serv; **to the very** ~, ääreni.  
**brimful** ['brɪmf(u)l], ääreni (liiga) täis.  
**bristle** [brɪsl], püsti ajama (harjaseid); ~d up his back, ajas harjased (karvad) püsti.  
**Britain** [brɪtn], Britannia.  
**British** ['brɪtɪʃ], britti-, inglisi-.  
**Brom** [brɒm], vaata 14.  
**brow** [braʊ], otsaesine, kulm.  
**buckle** [bʌkl], s., pannal; v., pandlaga kinni panema.  
**bullet** ['bʊlɪt], kuul.  
**Bummel** [bʌml], vaata 14.  
**bury** ['beri], matma.  
**business** ['bɪznɪs], äri, talitus.  
**buttercup** ['bʌtəkʌp], võilill.  
**buzz** [bʌz], s., sumin; v., sumisema.  
**bystander** ['baɪstændə\*], juuresolija, pealtvaataja.  
**cabin** [kæbɪn], kajut, väike eluruum laevas.  
**cabin boy** [kæbɪn 'bɔɪ], laeva-poiss.  
**cackle** [kækl], kaagutama.
- calm** [kɑ:m], vaikne, tasane.  
**can** [kæn], kann, purk.  
**Canary Islands** [kə'neəri'aɪləndz], Kanaaria saared.  
**cannon** ['kænən], suurtükk.  
**cape** [keɪp], maanina, neem.  
**captain** ['kæptɪn], laevajuht, kapten.  
**capture** ['kæptʃə\*], vangistama, vangi võtma, röövima, kinni pidama (laeva).  
**careless** ['keəlis], hooletu.  
**carelessness** ['keəlisnɪs], hooletus.  
**cargo** ['kɑ:gou], laeva koorem, veetav kaup.  
**Carron** ['kærən], vaata 35,1.  
**carronade** [kærəneɪd], laevasuurtükk; vaata 31,1.  
**carve** [kɑ:v], puusse ehk kivisse lõikama, nikerdama.  
**case** [keɪs], juhus, juhtumine; **that is not the** ~, lugu ei ole nii.  
**cask** [kɑ:sk], vaat, astjas.  
**cast down** ['kɑ:st 'daʊn], rõhutud, kurb.  
**cathedral** [kə'θi:drəl], pääkirik, katedraal.  
**Catskill** ['kætskɪl], vaata 12.  
**cause** [kɔ:z], s., põhjus; v, põhjust andma; ~d . . . **to be struck**, lasi valmistada (teha, taguda) . . .  
**caution** ['kɔ:ʃn], ettevaatus.  
**cautious** ['kɔ:ʃəs], ettevaatlik.  
**caw** [kɔ:], kraaksuma, krooksuma.  
**ceiling** ['si:lɪŋ], lagi; **on the** ~, laes.  
**chance** [tʃɑ:ns], võimalus, juhus; **now is my** ~ (3,10), „nüüd on paras silmapilk tulnud,“ ehk „nüüd on paras aeg.“

**channel** [tʃænl], kanaal, veetee, väin.  
**charge** [tʃɑ:dʒ], kallale tungima.  
**chatter** [tʃætə\*], latrama, lobi-sema, plarama.  
**cheat** [tʃi:t], petma, tüssama.  
**cheer** [tʃiə\*], s., kiiduavaldus; v., kiitust avaldama, „elada laskma.“  
**cheerfulness** [tʃiəfʊlnis], meele-rõõm.  
**chief** [tʃi:f], päalik.  
**chirp** [tʃɪ:p], tirtsuma, sirtsuma, rääksuma.  
**childish** [tʃaɪldɪʃ], lapselik.  
**chorus** [ˈkɔ:rəs], koor (laulus).  
**city** [ˈsɪti], linn.  
**cleaushaven** [ˈkli:ʃeɪvn], sile-daksaetud (habemest).  
**cleverness** [ˈkle:vənɪs], tarkus, anderikkus.  
**cliff** [klɪf], kaljusein, kaljurünk, järsak.  
**clothe** [klaʊð], riietama, riidesse panema, katma.  
**clothes** [klaʊðz], riided.  
**Cloudesley** [ˈklaʊdzli], vaata 15,52.  
**cluck** [klʌk], kloksuma, kaagu-tama.  
**coal** [kəʊl], süsi.  
**coast** [kəʊst], s., rand; v., ranna äärt mööda sõitma; ~ing vessel, rannalaev.  
**coffin** [ˈkɒfɪn], puusärk.  
**Coleridge** [ˈkɒlərɪdʒ], vaata 30.  
**command** [kəˈmænd], s., käsk, kamandus; be in ~ of, käsuta-ma, juhutama; be ~ed by, k-gist käsutatud saada, k-gi käsutuse all olema.  
**commander** [kəˈmændə\*], sõja-väeülem.  
**common** [ˈkɒmən], harilik, lihtne, labane.

**companion** kəmˈpænjən], seltsi-line.  
**company** [ˈkʌmpəni], selts(-kond).  
**complain** [kəmˈpleɪn], kaebama, kurtma (m-gi, k-gi üle, of).  
**complaint** [kəmˈpleɪnt], kaebtus.  
**comrade** [ˈkɒmri:d], seltsiline, sõber.  
**conceal** [kənˈsi:əl], varjama, (ära) peitma.  
**condition** [kənˈdɪʃn], seisukord, olukord.  
**confused** [kənˈfju:zd], segane, erutatud, üllatud.  
**Congress** [ˈkɒŋɡres], kongress, volinikkude koosolek, vaa-ta 14,23.  
**Connie** [ˈkɒni], vaata 27,2.  
**consent** [kənˈsent], nõus olema.  
**consist** [kənˈsɪst], koos seisma (k-gist, m-gist, of).  
**contentment** [kənˈtentmənt], rahulolek.  
**continent** [ˈkɒntinənt], kontinent, mannermaa.  
**continual** [kənˈtɪnjuəl], alaline, edasikestev.  
**continue** [kənˈtɪnju(:)], edasi jat-kama (rääkima, minema).  
**cord** [kɔ:d], nõör, pael.  
**Cornish** [ˈkɒnɪʃ], Kornwalli-; sõnast:  
**Cornwall** [ˈkɒmwəl], vaata 19,16.  
**count** [kaʊnt], lugema, arvama, (17,4), pidama.  
**county** [ˈkaʊnti], krahvkond.  
**courage** [ˈkʌrɪdʒ], vahvus, vaprus.  
**course** [kɔ:s], jooks; in the ~ of (the) day, päevajooksul.  
**crew** [kru:], meeskond (laeval).  
**cricket** [ˈkri:kɪt], riitsikas, rohu-tirts, kilk.  
**crow** [krou], vares.  
**crowd** [kraʊd], rahvahulk (-kogu).

- cruise** [kru:z], ristlema.  
**crush** [krʌʃ], purustama, hävitama.  
**cry** [krai], kisa.  
**culprit** [ˈkʌlprɪt], kurjategija.  
**curiosity** [ˈkjʊəriˈɒsɪti], uudishimu.  
**curious** [ˈkjʊəriəs], uudishimuline.  
**custom** [ˈkʌstəm], komme, viis.
- dale** [deɪl], org.  
**damage** [ˈdæmɪdʒ], kahju (sõjaväest jne. saadud).  
**Dame** [deɪm], (maja-) emand.  
**dance** [dɑ:ns], tants.  
**danger** [ˈdeɪn(d)ʒə\*], hädaoht.  
**dangerous** [ˈdeɪn(d)ʒ(ə)rəs], hädaohtlik, kardetav.  
**daring** [ˈdæərɪŋ], julge; sõnast: **dare** [deə\*], julgema, sõandama.  
**darkness** [ˈdɑ:knis], pimedus.  
**Darling** [ˈdɑ:lɪŋ], vaata 22.  
**dart** [dɑ:t], kargama, tormama.  
**dash** [dæʃ], lööma (laintest), viskama, tormama.  
**daunt** [daʊnt], hirmutama; (17,21) kõigutama.  
**dawn** [daʊn], koit.  
**Dawson** [ˈdɔ:s(ə)n], vaata 22.  
**daybreak** [ˈdeɪbreɪk], koit.  
**death** [deθ], surm.  
**deck** [dek], laevalagi.  
**declare** [dɪkˈleə\*], seletama, avaldama.  
**deep** [di:p], sügav (-us).  
**defeat** [diˈfi:t], s., kaotus; v., ära võitma.  
**defend** [diˈfend], kaitsma.  
**delay** [diˈlei], s., viivitus; v., viivitama, kinni pidama.  
**deliver** [diˈlɪvə\*], edasi andma, ~ up, tagasi (ära) andma.  
**demand** [di mə:nd], nõudma, paluma, tahtma, saada.
- den** [den], koobas, auk, pesa.  
**deny** [diˈnai], salgama, eitama.  
**descend** [diˈsend], alla tulema (astuma).  
**desert** [diˈzə:t], lahkuma, maha jätma.  
**destroy** [disˈtrɔɪ], hävitama, purustama.  
**determine** [diˈtɜ:mɪn], otsustama.  
**Devon** [devn], lühendud sõnast: **Devonshire** [ˈdevnʃɪə\*, -ʃɪə\*], krahvkond Inglismaal, vaata 16,6.  
**devote** [diˈvəʊt], v., pühendama, andma; ~d, truu, ustav.  
**diamond** [ˈdaɪəmənd], teemant.  
**Dick** [dik], vaata 10,2.  
**difficulty** [ˈdɪfɪkəlti], raskus.  
**dimple** [ˈdɪmpl], s., põselohuke; v., käherduma, virvendama, aukliseks tõmbuma.  
**disabled** [disˈeɪbld], lahingu-(teo)võimetu, purustud seisukorras olev.  
**disappear** [disəˈpiə\*], kaduma.  
**discover** [disˈkʌvə\*], leidma, nägema, märkama.  
**discoverer** [disˈkʌvərə\*], (maade)ülesleidja, maadeuurija.  
**discovery** [disˈkʌvəri], ülesleidus.  
**dish** [dɪʃ], vaagen, sööginõu.  
**dishearten** [disˈhɑ:tn], meelt rõhutuks ehk araks tegema; ~ed, arg, rõhutu.  
**distance** [ˈdɪstns], kaugus.  
**distant** [ˈdɪstnt], kaugel (ära olev).  
**divide** [diˈvaɪd], jagama, lahutada.  
**division** [diˈvɪʒn], jaotus, jagamine.  
**doubt** [daʊt], s., kahtlus; v., kahtlema; in ~. kahkvel.  
**doubtful** [ˈdaʊtful], kahtlane teadmata.

dove [dʌv], tuvi.  
 drag [dræg], vedama, tõmbama.  
 Drake [dreik], vaata 16.  
 dreadful ['dredf(u)], kole, hirmus.  
 droop [dru:p], närtsima hakkama, nõrkema, roiduma.  
 drown [draun], uputama; be ~ed, uppuma.  
 Dundee ['dʌndi:], vaata 18.  
 dusk [dʌsk], videvik, eha.  
 Dutch [dʌtʃ], hollandlane, hollandi.  
 Dutcher ['dʌtʃə\*], vaata 14.  
 duty ['dju:ti], kohus, kohustus.  
 eager ['i:gə\*], agar, vaimustud, innukas.  
 eagle [i:gl], kotkas.  
 earn [ɜ:n], teenima.  
 earnest ['ɜ:nɪst], tõsidus; in ~, tõemeeliselt.  
 echo ['ekou], s., kaja; v., kajama.  
 election [i'lekʃn], valimine.  
 emerald ['emərəld], smaragd (kalliskivi).  
 employ [im'plɔi], tarvitama.  
 enemy ['enimi, 'enəmi], vaenlane.  
 engage [in'geɪdʒ], teenistusse võtma.  
 engine ['endʒɪn], masin, vedur.  
 engineer [endʒi'niə\*], vedurijuht, inseneer.  
 Englishman ['ɪŋglɪʃmən], inglane.  
 engrave [in'greɪv], kirja (kujusid) metallisse lõikama, graveerima.  
 entirety [in'taɪəli], täitsa põhjalikult, läbi- ja -läbi.  
 entrance ['entrəns], sisseminek.  
 entrust [in'trʌst], usaldama, k-gi hoolde jätma.  
 equal ['i:kwəl], a., ühevõrra, ühesuurune; v., võrduma (23,D,2).

escape [is'keɪp], ära (lahti) pääseda, põgenema.  
 Europe ['juərəp], Euroopa.  
 European [juərə'piən], eurooplane, enroopa-  
 exchange [iks'tʃeɪn(d)ʒ], vahetus.  
 exclamation [eksklə'meɪʃn], hüüe.  
 excuse [iks'kju:s], s., vabandus.  
 excuse [iks'kju:z], v., vabandama.  
 expect [iks'pekt], ootama, lootma, arvama.  
 explore [iks'plɔ:\*], välja uurima.  
 explorer [iks'plɔ:rə\*], maadeülesleidja.  
 extreme [iks'tri:m], äärmine; ~ south, kõige lõunapoolsem olev.  
 faithful ['feɪθʊl], truud, ustav.  
 false [fɔ:ls], vale-, eba-, ebapä-rane, kahtlane.  
 fame [feim], kuulsus.  
 familiar [fə'mɪljə], kodunenud, tuttav, usaldatud; be ~ with, hästi tundma.  
 famous ['feɪməs], kuulsus.  
 fancy ['fænsi], lugupidamine, armastus; take a ~ to, k-gist lugupidama hakkama.  
 farmyard ['fɑ:mjɑ:d], talu-(mõisa-)hoov.  
 Farne [fɑ:n], vaata 22,1.  
 fashion [fæʃn], viis, komme, mood.  
 fault [fɔ:lt], süü, viga.  
 fearful ['fiəf(u)], hirmus, kole, üllatav; kohkunud, üllatud.  
 fearless ['fiəlis], kartmata, kohkumata.  
 feast [fi:st], pidu (-söök).  
 feathery ['fedəri], sulgedega kaetud.

- feeble** [fi:bl], nõrk, nõder, jõuetu.  
**feeler** ['fi:lə\*], tundesarv, tund-  
 mise-abinõu.  
**fierce** [fiəs], äge, metsik, vihane.  
**final** [fainl], lõpulik, lõpu-, vii-  
 mane; ~ ly ['fainli], lõpuks.  
**fire** [faiə\*], laskma, tuld andma.  
**firelight** ['faiəlait], tulevalge,  
 tulepaiste, koldetuli [28,3: kol-  
 detule paistel kuulduv kilgi  
 hää] vastukajana selle kesk-  
 päevasele (noon` tunnile suve-  
 kuul, mil ta laulis väljas ruk-  
 kipõllul].  
**fireplace** ['faiəpleis], tulease.  
**fireship** ['faiəʃip], tulelaev.  
**fireside** ['faiəsaid], kolle, kodu.  
**fit out** ['fit'aut], korda (valmis)  
 seadma, varustama.  
**fitted** ['fitid], kordaseatud, va-  
 rustatud.  
**Fitzwarren** [fits'wɔ:ri:n], vaata 10.  
**fix** [fiks], kinnitama, määrama.  
**flagship** ['flægʃip], lipulaev, pää-  
 likulaev.  
**flame** [fleim], leek.  
**flat** [flæt], tasane, lage, sile.  
**fleet** [fli:t], laevastik.  
**flog** [flɔ:g], peksma, lööma, „vatti  
 andma“.  
**flow** [flou], voolama.  
**fly** [flai], kärbes.  
**fold** [fould], s., karja- (lamba-)  
 aed; v., aeda koguma, kokku  
 ajama.  
**folly** ['fɔ:li], meeletus, rumalus.  
**force** [fɔ:s], jõud, võim.  
**foremost** ['fɔ:moust], kõige kuul-  
 sam (ülem).  
**forest** ['fɔ:rist], (põline) mets.  
**Forfarshire** ['fɔ:fəʃiə\*,-ʃə\*], vaa-  
 ta 22.  
**forgetful** [fə'getf(u)l], unutilik,  
 mälestamata.
- forgetfulness** [fə'getf(u)lnis], unu-  
 stus, mälestamatus.  
**form** [fɔ:m], moodustama, kuju-  
 tama.  
**former** ['fɔ:mə\*], eelmine.  
**Francis** ['frɑ:nsis], vaata 16,7/8.  
**frequent** ['fri:kwənt], sagedane,  
 tihti juhtuv, harilik.  
**fright** [frait], kohkumine, hirm,  
 kartus.  
**funeral** ['fju:n(ə)r(ə)l], matus.
- gab** [gæb], jutt, lobisemine;  
**have the gift of the ~**, kõ-  
 nemees olema, ladusalt rää-  
 kima, sõnaosav olema.  
**gabble** [gæbl], lobisema, latrama.  
**gale** [geil], torm, äge tuulehoog  
 (puhang).  
**Gardinier** ['gɑ:di:njə\*], vaata 14.  
**garret** ['gærɪt], põõningukamber.  
**general** ['dʒenr(ə)l], kindral, sõ-  
 javäejuht.  
**generally** ['dʒenrəli], üldiselt,  
 harilikult.  
**gentle** [dʒentl], tasane, vaikne,  
 järelandlik.  
**get rid of** [get'rid əv], lahti  
 saama, pääsema.  
**gift** [gift], and.  
**gleam** [glim], kumama, paistma,  
 särama.  
**globe** [glɔub], gloobus, maakera-  
 'kuju.  
**glory** ['glɔ:ri], au.  
**gnat** [næt], sääsk.  
**good-natured** ['gudneitʃəd], hea-  
 südamine, lahkeloomuga, ke-  
 na, aus.  
**goodness** ['gudnis], headus.  
**good-sized** ['gudsaidz], kaunis  
 suur.  
**grasshopper** ['grɑ:ʃɔpə\*], rohu-  
 tirts.

grave [greiv], tõsine; ~ly, tõsise ilmega (20,3).  
**Great Britain** ['greit 'britn], Suurbritaaniam.  
 greet [gri:t], teretama, tervitama.  
 greeting ['gri:tiŋ], teretus, tervitus.  
 grew [gru:], minevik sõn. grow, kasvama.  
**grey-bearded** ['grei'biədɪd], hallhabemeline.  
 groan [groun], s., oige; v., oigama.  
**growl** [graʊl], s., urisemine; v., urisema, nuruma.  
**growth** [grəʊθ], kasv, juurdekasvamine.  
**grumble** [grʌmbl], nurisema, nurama, tõrelema, näaklema (at).  
 guest [gest], külaline.  
**gully, gulley** ['gʌli], kuristik, õõnsus, lõhang (kalju, mäe jne sees).  
 gun [gʌn], püss, suurtükk.  
**hairdresser** ['hæədresə\*], juukse-  
 lõikaja, habemeajaja.  
 hall [hɔ:l], saal, eeskoda.  
 hallo [hə'lou], halloo!  
**handful** ['hændfʊl], peotäis, (21,36) mõni üksik, väike osa.  
**handsomely** ['hæn(d)səmli], ilusti, hästi.  
 harass ['hærəs], ahistama, mu-  
 ret tegema, mitte rahu andma, vaenustama, kallale kippuma.  
**harbour** ['hɑ:bə\*], sadam.  
 hare [hæ\*], jänes.  
 hasty ['heisti], kiire, rutt.  
 haunt [haʊnt], ilmuma, käima.  
 haven [heivn], sadam.  
**Hawkins** ['hɔ:kinz], vaata 16.

**hazel-nut** ['heizlnʌt], (sarapuu-) pähkel.  
**heat** [hi:t], üles soojendama.  
**heed** [hi:d], tähelepanu; **pay little** ~, halvasti tähelepanema, vähe hoolima m.gist.  
**height** [hait], kõrgus.  
**helpful** ['helpfʊl], abikas, aitav, kasulik.  
**helpless** ['helplis], nõutu, abitu.  
**Hendrick** ['hendrik], (holl.) Hindrik.  
**hero** ['hiərou], kangelane.  
**heroic** [hi'roʊ(j)k], vägimehelik, vahva, vapper.  
**hesitate** ['heziteit], kõhelema, kahtlema.  
**hesitation** [hezi'teiʃn], kõhklemine.  
**Highgate** ['haigit], linn põhjalääne pool Londoni.  
**Hillsman** ['hɪlzmən], mäeelanik.  
**Hind, Hind** [haind], emapõder, emahirv.  
**hinder** ['hində\*], takistama.  
**history** ['histəri], ajalugu.  
**hit** [hit], lööma, tabama.  
**hoist** [hoist], (üles) tõmbama, heiskama.  
**Holland** ['hɒlənd], Holland.  
**hollow** ['hɒləu], a., õõnes; s., õõnsus, sügavuses olev la-  
 gendik.  
**homeward** ['həʊmwəd], koju-  
 pool(-e).  
**horizon** [hə'raɪzn], silmapiir, tae-  
 vaäär.  
**horn, Horn** [hɔ:n], sarv.  
**host** [həʊst], peremees.  
**hotel** [həʊ(t)'tel], võõrastemaja.  
**hound** [haʊnd], (jahi-) koer.  
**Howard** [haʊəd], vaata 19.  
**Hudson** [hʌdsn], vaata 12.  
**hue** [hju:], värvitus, varjund.

**huge** [hju:dʒ], määratu, hiigla-  
**Hull** [hʌl], vaata 22.  
**hunt** [hʌnt], küttime, metsastama.  
**hunter** [ˈhʌntə\*], kütt, jahimees.  
**hurriedly** [ˈhʌridli], kiiresti, rut-  
 tu, kähku; **left them rather**  
 ~, pidi kiiresti oma teed mi-  
 nema, pidi ruttu sealt ära mi-  
 nema (lahkuma).  
**hurry** [ˈhʌri], s., kiire, rutt; **be**  
**in a ~**, rutt olema; v., ruttama,  
 kiirustama.  
**hurt** [hɜ:t], kurvastama.  
**hush** [hʌʃ], tasa, vagusi.  
  
**idea** [aiˈdiə], mõte, aade.  
**idleness** [ˈaidlnis], töötus, laiskus.  
**ill-tempered** [ˈiltɛmpəd], paha-  
 loomuline, kuritahtlik.  
**immortal** [iˈmɔ:tl], suremata, iga-  
 vene.  
**important** [imˈpɔ:nt], tähtis.  
**inclined** [inˈklaɪnd], kalduv.  
**India** [ˈɪndjə], India.  
**Indies** [ˈɪndiz], **the ~**, India.  
**inherit** [inˈherɪt], pärima.  
**inn** [ɪn], trahter, kõrts.  
**inquire** [inˈkwɪə\*], järele pärima,  
 järele kuulama.  
**instant** [ˈɪnstənt], silmapilk.  
**instrument** [ˈɪnstrʊmənt], riist,  
 abinõu.  
**intelligent** [inˈtelɪdʒənt], vaimu-  
 kas, teravamõistusega, intelli-  
 gent.  
**intend** [inˈtend], kavatsema, mõt-  
 lema.  
**interest** [ˈɪntrɪst], huvi.  
**interior** [inˈtɪəriə\*], sisemine,  
 seesmine, sise-, **in the ~**,  
 sisemaal.  
**invade** [inˈveɪd], sisse (kallale)  
 tungima.

**invader** [inˈveɪdə\*], pääle- (sisse-)  
 tungija.  
**isthmus** [ˈɪsməs], maakael, kitsus.  
  
**Java** [ˈdʒɑ:və], Jaava.  
**jaw** [dʒɔ:], lõug.  
**jewel** [ˈdʒu:ɪl], kalliskivi.  
**job** [dʒɔb], toim, tegevus, töö.  
**Joe** [dʒou], vaata 12,2.  
**join** [dʒɔɪn], ühinema.  
**journey** [ˈdʒə:ni] reis, sõit.  
**joyful** [ˈdʒɔɪf(u)l], rõõmus, rõõ-  
 mustav.  
**judge** [dʒʌdʒ], kohtumõistja.  
**Judith** [ˈdʒu:diθ], Juudith.  
  
**Kate** [keit], Kadri.  
**Kathleen** [ˈkæθli:n], Iirimaal tar-  
 vitatav vorm sõn. **Katherine**.  
**keen** [ki:n], osav, läbitungiv.  
**keeper** [ˈki:pə\*], järelvaataja,  
 valvur.  
**keeping** [ˈki:piŋ], hoid, hoolitsus,  
 valve.  
**keg** [keg], lähker.  
**kernel** [kə:nl], tuum.  
**key** [ki:], võti.  
**keyhole** [ˈki:həʊl], võtmeauk.  
**kick** [kɪk], s., tõuge, v., (jalaga)  
 tõukama.  
**kill** [kɪl], surmama, maha lööma,  
 tapma.  
**kind** [kaɪnd], hea, lahke.  
**kind-hearted** [ˈkaɪndhɑ:tid], hea-  
 südamine, lahke.  
**kindness** [ˈkaɪndnis], lahkus.  
**kinsman** [ˈkɪnzmən], sugulane,  
 hõimlane.  
**kite** [kaɪt], tuulemadu.  
**Kitty** [ˈkɪti], vaata 27,2.  
**knee** [ni:], põlv.  
**kneel** [ni:l], põlvitama, põlvili  
 langema.

**knight** [nait], rüütel.  
**knighthood** ['naithud], rüütlikkus, rüütliseisus.  
**knock** [nɒk], koputamine.  
**knowledge** ['nɒlɪdʒ], teadmine, tarkus.  
**lad** [læd], poiss.  
**land** [lænd], randuma, maandumad.  
**last** [lɑ:st], vältama, kestma, kuluma.  
**latter** ['lætə\*], viimane.  
**lead** [led], tina.  
**leaden** [ledn], tina-, tinast.  
**leafy** ['li:fi], leherikas, lehekas.  
**leak** [li:k], pragu, (vee-)läbijooks; **spring** a ~, voodama, vett läbi laskma hakkama.  
**leap** [li:p], hüppama, kargama.  
**leave** [li:v], lahkumine; luba.  
**length** [leŋθ], pikkus.  
**lid** [lid], kaas, laug (silma-).  
**lieutenant** [lef'tenənt], leitnant.  
**lighthouse** ['laithaus], tuletorn.  
**lightning** ['laitniŋ], välg, välgu-töök.  
**light-winged** ['lait'wiŋd], kerge-tiivne.  
**likeness** ['laiknis], sarnadus; **in his own ~** (12,22), väga tema sarnane.  
**linnet** ['linɪt], kanepilind (ränd-laululind, tiivad ja selg pruunikad, päalagi ja rind punakad, kõhualune valkjas, saba must).  
**lion** [laiən], lõvi.  
**liquor** ['likə\*], vedelik, alkohooliline jook.  
**list** [list], luules esinev vorm sõnast **listen** [lisn], kuulama.  
**listener** ['lisnə\*], (pealt-)kuulaja.  
**lively** ['laivli], elav, virk.

**load** [loud], s., koorem, last; v., laadima, koormat peale panema.  
**London** ['lɒndən], London.  
**lonely** ['ləunli], üksik, üksildane.  
**look** [lʊk], pilk, vaade; **have a ~ at**, silmitsema.  
**look-out** ['lʊk'au̯t], vaht, piiluja, piilur (laeval).  
**lord** [lɔ:d], lord, ülemus; ~-mayor [mɛə\*], ülem-linnapea (Londonis); v., (12,3) ~ it, üle ulatama, (majesteetlikult) valitsema, tõusma, valdama.  
**lower** [ləuə\*], alla laskma, laskuma.  
**loyal** [ləiəl], truud.  
**loyalty** ['ləiəlti], truudus.  
**luck** [lʌk], õnn.  
**luckless** ['lʌklis], õnnetu.  
**lucky** ['lʌki], õnnelik; (10,19) **he was ~**, tal läks õnneks, tal oli õnne.  
**Magellan** [mæ'gɛlən], vaata 17,21.  
**Maggie** ['mægi], vaata 27,2.  
**main** [mein], pea-, esi-.  
**mainland** ['meinlənd], mannermaa.  
**manageable** ['mænidʒəbl], kergeti käsitatav (tarvitatav), juhitud, käepäralik.  
**man-of-war** ['mænəv'wɔ:], sõjalaev.  
**map** [mæp], (maa-, mere-) kaart.  
**march** [mɑ:tʃ], marssima.  
**Marryat** ['mæriət], vaata 35.  
**mass** [mæs], kogu, hulk; **became a ~ of roaring flame** (19,31), muutus vinguvaks (mõllavaks) leekide- (tule-) mereks.  
**mast** [mɑ:st], (laeva-) mast.  
**mate** [meɪt], tüürimees, kapteni abilise (laeval).

- matter** ['mætə\*], asi, aine; **what is the ~?** mis on juhtunud? **mis on lahti?** mis viga? **mis seal on?**
- mayor** [mɛə\*], linnapea.
- medal** [medl], auhaha.
- memory** ['mem(ə)ri], mälestus, meeldetuletus.
- merchant** ['mɜ:tʃənt], kaupmees.
- merriment** ['merrimənt], rõõmsus, elevus, huvitus.
- merriness** ['merinis], virkus, elevus jne.
- midday** ['middei], keskpäev, lõuna = kell 12 päeval.
- mind** [maɪnd], (küsivais ja eita-vais lausis) vastu olema; tahtma; **would you ~ carrying** (9,2), ole lahke ja kanna, kas sa ei tahaks kanda.
- mirth** [mɜ:θ], rõõm, elevus.
- misfortune** [mis'fɔ:tʃn], õnnetus.
- mishap** [mis'hæp], äpardus.
- mistaken** [mis'teɪkn], **be ~**, eksima.
- mock** [mɒk], pilkama, mõnitama, hõõvitama, petma.
- moderate** ['mɒdrɪt], paras, mõõdukas.
- modest** ['mɒdist], häbelik, alandlik, tagasihoidlik.
- modesty** ['mɒdisti], alandlikkus, tagasihoidlikkus, viisakus.
- Molly** ['mɒli], vaata 27,2.
- monarch** ['mɒnək], (ainu-) valitseja.
- moonlight** ['mu:nlaɪt], kuupaiste (-valge).
- Moor** [muə\*], moor; paljus; moorid (rahvatõug Aafrikas).
- mortal** [mɔ:tɪl], surelik.
- moss** [mɒs], sammal.
- mostly** ['moustli], enamasti, suu-remalt jaolt.
- mow** [mou], niitma.
- mud** [mʌd], muda, pori.
- muddy** ['mʌdi] mudane, porine.
- multiplication** ['mʌltipli'keɪʃn], kasvatamine, kord-arvamine.
- multiply** ['mʌltiplai], kasvatama.
- music** ['mjuzɪk], muusika.
- musical** ['mjuzɪkl], muusikalik, muusika-, mängu-.
- musician** [mju:(z)ɪʃn], mängumees, muusikant.
- nail** [neɪl], naelutama.
- narrow** ['nærou], kitsas.
- nation** [neɪʃn], rahvas.
- native** ['neɪtɪv], kodumaaline, rahvuslik; s., päriselanik.
- nature** ['neɪtʃə\*], loodus.
- natural** ['nætʃr(ə)l], loomulik.
- naval** [neɪvl], meri-; ~ **victory**, võit merel.
- navy** [neɪvi], sõjalaevastik.
- Ned** [ned], vaata 10,2.
- need** [ni:d], s., häda, puudus; v., tarvitsema, pruukima.
- neighbourhood** ['neɪbəhʊd], naabruskond.
- Nelly** ['neli], vaata 27,2.
- Newgate** ['nju:ɡeɪt], vaata 11,42.
- new-mown** ['nju:məʊn], hiljuti niidetud.
- news** [nju:z], uudis(-ed), teade (teated), sõnum(-id).
- newspaper** ['nju:speɪpə\*], ajaleht.
- New-York** ['nju:'jɔ:k], New-York.
- nice-looking** ['naɪslu:kɪŋ], ilusa (meeldiva) välimusega.
- Nicolas** ['nikələs], Nikolai, Miku.
- ninepins** ['naɪnpi:nz], veeremäng;
- play at ~**, keegelt mängima.

**nobody** ['noubədi], ükski, keegi.  
**nod** [nɒd], nokutama.  
**noisy** ['noizi], käratsev, lärmitsev.  
**Northumberland** [nɔ:'θʌmbəlænd],  
 krahvkond Inglismaal.  
**northward** ['nɔ:θwəd], põhja-  
 pool(-e).  
**note** [nəʊt], kiri, sedel.  
**nourish** ['nʌrɪʃ], v., toitma.  
**nut** [nʌt], pähkel.

**oar** [ɔ:\*], mõla, aer.  
**object** ['ɔbdʒɪkt], otstarbe, ees-  
 märk.  
**ocean** [ouʃn], okean, ilmameri.  
**odd** [ɒd], liig, liigarvuline, üle-  
 määrane; ~ **job**, kõrval-töö.  
**odd-looking** ['ɔdlʊkiŋ], imeliku  
 välimusega, veidranäoline.  
**odds** [ɒdz], **fight against every ~**  
 (35,11), mitmekordselt tuge-  
 vama vaenlase vastu sõdima,  
 iga mõeldava ülivõimu vastu  
 võitlema.  
**Odds bobs** ['ɒdz 'bɒbz], hüüds. =  
**God's body**: taevas halasta!  
 Jumala pärast!  
**officer** ['ɔfisə\*], ohvitser, amet-  
 nik, ülemus.  
**open** [əʊpən], **the ~**, legendik;  
**in the ~**, lausa taeva all.  
**opening** ['əʊpniŋ], avaus.  
**opinion** [ə'piɪjən], arvamine,  
 mõte.  
**order** ['ɔ:də\*], käskima; käsk,  
 rahu.  
**outermost** ['autəməʊst], kõige  
 välisem, väljaspoolne.  
**outlandish** ['autləndɪʃ], a., väl-  
 jamaaline.  
**outlet** ['autlet], väljavoolu koht,  
 jõe-suu.

**outstrip** [aut'stri:p], ületama,  
 üle ulatama, ette jõudma,  
 mööda sõitma (minema).  
**overtake** [əʊvə'teɪk], järele jõud-  
 ma, kinni saama.  
**owe** [əʊ], võlgnema.  
**own** [əʊn], omama.  
**owner** ['əʊnə\*], omanik.  
**Oxford** ['ɔksfəd], linn Inglis-  
 maal.

**Pacific** ['pæsɪfɪk], **the ~**, Vaikne  
 Meri.  
**pack** [pæk], kimp, pundar.  
**palace** ['pælɪs], loss.  
**Panama** [pænə'mɑ:], Panama.  
**pane** [peɪn], (akna-) ruut, klaas.  
**pantry** ['pæntri], söögikapp, toi-  
 dukamber.  
**park** [pɑ:k], park.  
**Parliament** ['pɑ:ləmənt], (Inglis-  
 maal) riigikogu, maapäev.  
**parrot** ['pærət], papagoi.  
**partly** ['pɑ:tlɪ], osalt.  
**party** ['pɑ:ti], selts, seltskond;  
 ~ **of pleasure**, lõbupidu, lõ-  
 buseltskond, piduseltskond.  
**pass** [pɑ:s], (mäe-)kitsus, käik.  
**passage** ['pæsɪdʒ], (üle-)sõit, tee,  
 reis; **after the ~ of years**,  
 palju aastaid olid möödunud,  
 mitme aasta järele.  
**passenger** ['pæsɪndʒə\*], mööda-  
 mineja (isik).  
**patriot** ['pætriət], isamaa-amas-  
 taja, patriot.  
**patriotic** ['pætri'ɔ:tɪk], isamaalik.  
**patriotism** ['pætriətɪzəm], isamaa-  
 armastus, patriotismus.  
**pattern** ['pætən], (kauba-) proov.  
**pave** [peɪv], sillutama, prügitama.  
**peace** [pi:s], rahu, vaikus.  
**peacock** ['pi:kɒk], paabulind.

pedlar ['pedlə\*], rändav kaupmees, harjusk.  
 perceive [pə'si:v], nägema., märkama, silmama.  
 perfect ['pə:fikt], täielik.  
 perish ['perif], otsa (surma) saama, hukkuma.  
 person [pə:sn], isik.  
 pitch [pitʃ], tipp, kõrgus; to a high ~ (20,27), nii kõrgele, nii kuulsaks.  
 plain [plein], selge, arusaadav.  
 plank [plæŋk], laud, plank.  
 plant [plɑ:nt], s., taim, kasv; v., istutama.  
 plate [pleit], plaat, leht.  
 Plate [pleit], vaata 17.  
 player ['pleiə\*], mängija, mängumees.  
 plaything ['pleiθiŋ], mänguasi, (-kann).  
 plead [pli:d], anuma, hõrdasti (päälekäivalt) paluma.  
 plunge [plʌn(d)ʒ], naarama, vee alla minema, pistma.  
 Plymouth Hoe ['pliməθ 'hou], vaata 16,1.  
 poet [pouit], luulekirjanik, luuletaja.  
 point [pɔint], (näpuga) näitama.  
 Pole [poul], lõuna- ehk põhjanaba.  
 police [pə'li:s], politsei.  
 policeman [pə'li:smən], politseinik, kordnik.  
 polite [pə'lait], viisakas.  
 Porto Bello ['pɔ:to(u)'belou], linn Panama merekitsusel Ameerikas.  
 Portugal ['pɔ:tʃug(ə)l], Portugal.  
 possess [pə'zes], omama.  
 possession [pə'zeʃn], omandus.  
 post [poust], tulp, post.  
 power [pauə\*], võim, jõud.

powerful ['pauəf(u)l], võimuis, vägev, tugev.  
 powerless ['pauəlis], võimetu, nõrk.  
 praise [preiz], s., kiitus; v., kiitma.  
 pray [prei], paluma.  
 president ['prezid(ə)nt], president, riigipea.  
 price [prais], hind.  
 pride [praid], uhkus.  
 prithce ['priði:], ma palun sind.  
 proceed [prə'si:d], edasi minema (sõitma, jätkama).  
 profit ['prɔfit], kasu, tulu.  
 property [prɔpəti], omandus.  
 proud [praud], uhke, kõrge-meelne.  
 province ['prɔvins], maakond.  
 provitious [prə'viʒnz], toiduained, moon, söögivara.  
 punish ['pʌniʃ], karistama.  
 purpose ['pə:pəs], otstarbe, eesmärk, nõu, mõte.  
 purr [pə:\*], ketrama (kass).  
 purse [pə:s], rahakott.  
 puss [pus], kiisu, miisu.  
 puzzle [pʌz], mõtlema, arutama, pead murdma.  
 quack [kwæk], prääksuma, kraaksuma, vaakuma.  
 queen [kwin], kuninganna.  
 queer [kwio\*], imelik, veider.  
 quickness ['kwiknis], kiirus.  
 quiver ['kwivə\*], värisema.  
 rag [ræg], kalts, hilt.  
 ragged ['rægid], närune, räbal.  
 Raleigh ['rɔ:li, 'rɔ:li, 'ræli], vaata 19.  
 ramble [ræmbəl], s., rändamine, rändamiskäik; v., (sinna-tänna) rändama, hulkuma.

**range** [rein(d)ʒ], s., laskekaugus (-piir, -maa); v., ümber hulkuma, rändama.

**rapid** ['ræpid], kiire, nope.

**rarely** ['reəli], harva.

**ravine** [rə'vi:n], kuristik, õõnsus.

**reckless** ['reklis], kartmata, hulljulge.

**re-echo** [ri(:)'ekou], kajastuma, tagasi kajama.

**reel** [ri:l], vaaruma, tuikuma.

**regard** [ri'gɑ:d], millekski pidama.

**region** ['ri:dʒn], koht, paikkond, ringkond.

**reign** [rein], s., valitsus; v., valitsema.

**reinforce** [ri:i'n'fɔ:s], kõvendama, rohkendama.

**rejoice** [ri'dʒɔis], rõõmustelema, rõõmus olema, rõõmu tundma.

**relate** [ri'leit], jutustama.

**relic** ['relik], jäänus(-ed).

**remain** [ri'mein], jääma, järele jääma.

**remains** [ri'meinz], jäänused.

**repair** [ri'peə\*], (ära) parandama.

**repeat** [ri'pi:t], kordama, korduma.

**report** [ri'pɔ:t], pauk, kõmakas; kaja, kõma.

**republic** [ri'pʌblik], vabariik.

**require** [ri'kwaɪə\*], vajama, nõudma.

**rescue** ['reskju:], s., päästmine, vabastamine; v., päästma, vabastama.

**restless** ['restlis], rahutu, karsitu.

**restore** [ri'stɔ:\*], uuesti jalule (korda) seadma.

**retreat** [ri'tri:t], taanduma, taganema.

**return** [ri'tɜ:n], in ~ for her, tasutaks tema eest, tema asemele.

**revisit** [ri'vizit], uuesti vaatamas (võõrsil) käima, minema.

**riches** ['ritʃiz], rikkus.

**rid**, vaata **get**.

**ridge** [ridʒ], mäeriba (-ahelik), mäeseljandik.

**ring** [riŋ], helisema, kõlama.

**Rip Van Winkle** ['ripvæn'wiŋkl], vaata 12.

**roar** [rɔ:\*], s., möörgamine, kohin; v., möörgama, kohisema.

**rock** [rɔ:k], kalju, rüngas.

**rocky** ['rɔ:ki], mägiline, kaljuline; ~ **ridge**, kaljuline, mäehari (-selg).

**root** [ru:t], juur.

**rope** [roup], köis.

**Rover** ['rouvə\*], vaata 27.

**row** [rou], s., rida; sõud; v., sõudma, aerutama.

**royal** [rɔiəl], kuninglik.

**rub** [rʌb], õõruma, nühkima.

**ruby** ['ru:bi], rubiin (kivi).

**rug** [rʌg], kate, vilt, vaip.

**rush** [rʌʃ], ruttama, tormama; ~ **up**, kohale (juure) ruttama.

**rust** [rʌst], rooste.

**rustle** [rʌsl], kahisema, sahisema.

**rusty** ['rʌsti], roostene.

**sack** [sæk], kott.

**safety** ['seifti], kindlustus; in ~, täiesti kaitstud.

**sailor** ['seilə\*], merimees.

**St. Paul** [sn(t)'pɔ:l], vaata 19, 27.

**satisfy** ['sætisfai], rahuldama.

**savage** ['sævɪdʒ], a., vihane, metsik; s., metsinimene, metslane.

**save** [seiv], päästma.

**scabbard** ['skæbəd], tupp.

- scare [skæə\*], ehmatama, hirmutama.  
 scatter [ˈskæʔə\*], hajutama, laiali (koost) ära ajama, pilutama.  
 scene [si:n], vaateplats, pilt.  
 schoolmaster [ˈsku:lma:stə\*], koolmeister.  
 scold [skould], tõrelema, sõimama.  
 scrape [skreip], kraapima, kaapima, kratsima.  
 seaman [ˈsi:mən], merimees.  
 seamanship [ˈsi:mənʃip], merimehelikkus, merimehe-osavus.  
 seaport [ˈsi:pɔ:t], merilinn, sadamalinn.  
 search [sə:tʃ], s., otsimine; in ~ of, selleks et otsida; v., otsima.  
 secure [siˈkjuə\*], kindel, kaitsitud.  
 seed [si:d], seeme.  
 seek [si:k], otsima.  
 seize [si:z], (kinni) haarama, võtma.  
 self-important [ˈselfimˈpɔ:tnt], ise-teadev, tähtis.  
 sergeant [ˈsɑ:dʒənt], seersant (sõjaväes).  
 serve [sə:v], teenima.  
 service [ˈsɜ:vɪs], teenistus.  
 set off [ˈset ɔ:f], teele asuma.  
 shadow [ˈʃædəu], vari.  
 shallow [ˈʃæləu], madal, õhuke (vesi).  
 shape [ʃeip], kuju.  
 share [ʃeə\*] s., (kaas-) osa, jagu; v., jagama.  
 shave [ʃeiv], habet ajama.  
 shawl [ʃɔ:l], rätik, sall.  
 sheet [ʃi:t], lina.  
 shell [ʃel], koor (pähkle-).
- shelter [ˈʃeltə\*], s., kaitse, peavari; v., kaitsma, varjama.  
 shoot [ʃu:t], püssi laskma, tuld andma.  
 shore [ʃɔ:\*], rand, mereäär.  
 short [ʃɔ:t], lühike; ~ for (1,35), lühendatud sõnast.  
 shout [ʃaut], s., kisa, hüüe; v., kisendama, hüüdma.  
 Shovel [ˈʃʌvl], vaata 15,52.  
 shower [ˈʃaʊə\*], sadu, valing.  
 shrank [ˈfræŋk], minevik sõn, shrink.  
 shrill [ʃrɪl], läbilõikav, terav, kime.  
 shrink [ˈfrɪŋk], kõrvale hoidma, taganema, tagasi kohkuma.  
 shrug [ˈʃrʌg], kehitama.  
 sigh [sai], s., ohke; v., ohkama.  
 sight [sait], s., vaade, nähtus; v., silmama, nägema.  
 sign [sain], märk, täht.  
 signal [ˈsiɡn(ə)l], s., märguandmine; v., märku andma.  
 simple [sɪmpl], lihtne, loomulik, lapsik, rumal.  
 singe [sɪn(d)ʒ], põletama, kõrvetama.  
 single [ˈsɪŋɡl], ainus.  
 sink [sɪŋk], vajuma.  
 sip [sɪp], nipsama, imema, maitsema.  
 skilful [ˈskɪlfʊl], osav.  
 skill [skɪl], osavus.  
 skin [skɪn], nahk.  
 sky-high [ˈskaɪhaɪ], taevakõrgune.  
 snap [snæp], ~ went jne. (2,29), „särts“ („tärts“) ütles (tegi).  
 soil [soɪl], maa, (maa-) pind.  
 soldier [ˈsouldʒə\*], sõdur.  
 sorry [ˈsɔ:ri], kurb, rõhutud;  
**J am ~ for him**, mul on kahju temast.

**sound** [saund], terve, hea; he  
 slept ~ly, ta magas hästi.  
**southerly** ['sʌðəli], lõunapoolne.  
**southernmost** ['sʌðənmoʊst], kõi-  
 ge lõunapoolsem (olev).  
**southward**, ['sauθwəd], lõuna-  
 pool(-e).  
**sow** [sou], külvama.  
**space** [speis], järk, paik, koht.  
**Spain** [spein], Hispaania.  
**Spaniard** ['spænjəd], hispaan-  
 lane.  
**Spanish** ['spæniʃ], hispaania-  
 (keel).  
**spare** [spɛə\*], säästma, armu  
 heitma.  
**spirit** ['spirit], vaim, hing.  
**spite** [spait], in ~ of him, hoo-  
 limata temast, ehk ta küll töö-  
 tas tugevasti.  
**splash** [splæʃ], pritsima, purs-  
 kama; laksti!  
**splended** ['splendid], särav, tore,  
 suurepärane.  
**splendour** ['splendə\*], hiilgus,  
 toredus.  
**spread** [spred], laiali (välja) lao-  
 tama.  
**spring up** ['sprɪŋ'ʌp], tõusma,  
 puhuma hakkama (tuul).  
**stare** [stɛə\*], (ammuli suuga)  
 vahtima.  
**state** [steit], teatama, tõendama.  
**statement** ['steɪtmənt], teada-  
 anne, tõendus, kuulutus.  
**statue** ['stætju:], (raid-, keha-)  
 kuju.  
**steam** [sti:m], aur.  
**steamer** ['sti:mə\*], aurik.  
**steams hip** [sti:m'fɪp], aurulaev.  
**steep** [sti:p], järsk.  
**stern** [stɔ:n], laeva tagumine  
 pool, pära.

**stiff** [stɪf], kange, kõva.  
**still** [sti:l], vaikima, vaigistama.  
**sting** [stiŋ], nõeluma, pistma.  
**stir** [stɜ:\*], liikuma, liigutama.  
**stout** [staut], paks, kehakas,  
 tubli.  
**strait** [streɪt], merekitsus, väin.  
**stranger** ['streɪn(d)ʒə\*], võõras.  
**stream** [stri:m], veevoog, suur  
 jõgi.  
**strength** [streŋθ], jõud, võim.  
**strife** [straɪf], riid, kakelus,  
 võitlus.  
**stroke** [strouk], silitama, pai-  
 tama.  
**struggle** [strʌgl], s., tüli, võit-  
 lus; hand to hand ~, käsitsi-  
 võitlus; v., võitlema, tülitsema.  
**stubborn** ['stʌbən], kangekaelne,  
 vastuhakkav.  
**stuff** [stʌf], aine, riie, ollus.  
**sturdy** ['stɜ:di], tubli, tugev.  
**subject** ['sʌbdʒɪkt], (riigi-) alam,  
 kodanik.  
**succeed** [sək'si:d], õnnestama,  
 edu olema.  
**sufficient** [sə'fɪʃnt], omaga rahul,  
 küll.  
**sunlight** ['sʌnlait], päiksepaiste  
 (-valgus).  
**sunny** ['sʌni], päiksepaistene.  
**sunrise** ['sʌnraɪz], päikese tõus.  
**sunset** ['sʌnsɛt], päikese looja-  
 minek.  
**supply** [sə'plai], s., varus, taga-  
 vara, kaitseabinõu. v., varus-  
 tama.  
**support** [sə'pɔ:t], toetama.  
**surprise** [sə'praɪz], üllatama.  
**Susan** [su:zn], Susanua.  
**swallow** ['swɒləʊ], neelama.  
**swift** [swɪft], kiire, nope, ruttu-  
 line.

**swing** [swiŋ], kiikuma, õõtsuma; viskama, paiskama.  
**word** [wɔ:d], sõõk.  
**swing** [swaŋ], min. kesks. sõnast swing.  
**tame** [teim], talts(-utatud), alandlik.  
**tap** [tæp], koputama, löõma.  
**teach** [ti:tʃ], õpetama.  
**teacher** [ˈti:tʃə\*], (kooli-)õpetaja.  
**teapot** [ˈti:pət], teekann.  
**temper** [ˈtempə\*], tuju, meeleolu.  
**tender** [ˈtendə\*], õrn, hell.  
**tent** [tent], telk.  
**terrify** [ˈterifai], kohkuma, hirmuma.  
**terror** [ˈterə\*], hirm.  
**Thames** [ˈtemz], the ~, Themsi jõgi.  
**thanks** [θæŋks], tänu, tänupalk; **offer up** ~, tänama.  
**thee** [ði:], sina.  
**thought** [θɔ:t], mõte.  
**thoughtful** [ˈθɔ:tf(u)l], mõtterikas, mõtetes olev.  
**thrill** [θril], ärritama, väristama; ~ed the heart of a people, äratas autunnet rahva seas (südames).  
**throne** [θroun], troon.  
**thrush** [θrʌʃ], räästas (lind).  
**thunder** [ˈθʌndə\*], müristamine.  
**tinker** [ˈtiŋkə\*], plekisepp.  
**tiny** [ˈtaini], väike, pisikene.  
**toil** [tɔil], s., töö, vaev; v., töõtama, vaeva nägema.  
**tomb** [tu:m], haud.  
**tongs** [tʌŋz], tangid.  
**top** [tɒp], ülemine äär, päälmine ehk ülemine osa millegist.  
**torrent** [ˈtɒr(ə)nt], veevool, vird, kosk.

**touch** [tʌtʃ], puudutama.  
**Trafalgar** [trəˈfælgə\*], vaata 35.  
**trap** [træp], lõks.  
**traveller** [ˈtrævlə\*], reisija.  
**treat** [tri:t], kohtlema, ümberkäima,  
**tribe** [traib], suguharu, sugu.  
**tribute** [ˈtribju:t], tribut, au, austamine.  
**trim** [trim], seadma, tasakaalus hoidma.  
**troops** [tru:ps], salgad, sõjahulgad.  
**truly** [ˈtru:li], tõesti, tõepoolest.  
**trumpet** [ˈtrʌmpit], pasun.  
**trunk** [trʌŋk], puutüvi.  
**trust** [trʌst], lootma, usaldama.  
**truth** [tru:θ], õigus.  
**tumble** [tʌmbəl], komistama, kukkuma.  
**twitter** [ˈtwitə\*], lidistama, siristama, laulma (lind).  
**two-legged** [ˈtu:legd], kahejalgne.  
**ugliness** [ˈʌglinis], inetus.  
**ugly** [ˈʌgli], inetu.  
**unbounded** [ʌnˈbaundid], piirita.  
**unbuckle** [ʌnˈbʌkl], lahti tegema (pandlast).  
**unequal** [ʌnˈi:kwəl], mitte ühetasane.  
**unfortunate** [ʌnˈfɔ:tʃnit], õnnetu.  
**unhappiness** [ʌnˈhæpinis], õnnetus.  
**unharmèd** [ʌnˈhɑ:md], vigastamata, terve.  
**United States** [juˈnaitidˈsteits], the ~, Ühendatud riigid.  
**unknown** [ʌnˈnəun], tundmata, teadmata.  
**unless** [ʌnˈles], kui mitte.  
**unmanageable** [ʌnˈmænidʒəbl], juhtimata, kõlbmata.

- unpleasant** [ʌn'pleznt], vastu-  
meelne, inetu, halb.  
**unsupported** [ʌnsə'pɔ:tɪd], kait-  
seta, abitu.  
**untie** [ʌn'tai], (sõlimest) avama,  
lahti tegema.  
**use** [ju:s], tarvitus, kasu.  
**useless** ['ju:slis], asjata, kasuta,  
kõlbmata.
- vain** [veɪn], asjata, kasuta, tühi;  
in ~, asjata.  
**valley** ['væli], org.  
**valuable** ['væljuəbl], kallihinna-  
line, kallis.  
**value** ['vælju:], hind.  
**Vedder** ['vedə\*], vaata 14.  
**vessel** [vesl], laev.  
**victorious** [vɪk'tɔ:riəs], võidurikas.  
**view** [vju:], vaade, pilk, väljavaade.  
**villain** ['vilən], võrukael, petis.  
**violence** ['vaiələns], ägedus,  
võim, vägivald.  
**Violent** ['vaiələnt], äge, tugev,  
vali.  
**violet** ['vaiələɪt], sinisilm, kanni-  
kene.  
**violin** ['vaiəli:n], viiul.  
**virtue** ['vɜ:tju:], voorus.  
**visitor** ['vɪzɪtə\*], külaline, võõras.  
**volley** ['vɒli], pauk tervituseks  
ehk austamiseks, kogupauk.  
**volunteer** [vɒlən'tiə\*], (vabataht-  
likult) üles andma.  
**vote** [vout], hää, hääletama.  
**voyage** [vɔɪdʒ], (mere-) sõit.
- waddle** [wɒdl], komberdama,  
tuigerdama, vaaruvalt kõn-  
dima.  
**wag** [wæg], liputama, lehvitama.  
**wagon** ['wæɡən], vanker.
- wagoner** ['wæɡənə\*], woorimees,  
vedaja.  
**walnut** ['wɒlnʌt], saksa maapäh-  
kel.  
**want** [wɒnt], puudus, tarvidus;  
**be badly in ~ of**, kibedasti  
vajama.  
**war** [wɔ:ə\*], sõda.  
**wares** [wɛəz], kaubad.  
**warmth** [wɔ:mθ], soojus.  
**warn** [wɔ:n], hoiatama.  
**warning** ['wɔ:niŋ], hoiatus.  
**warrior** ['wɔ:riə\*], sõjamees.  
**way** [wei], tee; **give ~**, järel  
andma, vaikima.  
**weary** ['wiəri], a., väsinud; v.,  
ära väsima.  
**weather-beaten** ['weðəbi:tɪn], tuu-  
lest aetud, vintsutatud.  
**wedding** ['wedɪŋ], pulmad.  
**well** [wel], kaev.  
**whatever** [wɒt'evə\*], sugugi, **with**  
**no . . . ~**, üleüldse ilma . . . ,  
mingisuguse . . .  
**wheat** [wi:t], nisu.  
**wheresoe'er** [wɛəso(u)'eə\*], kus  
iganes, kus veel (iaal).  
**whisper** ['wɪspə\*], v., sosistama;  
s., sosistamine.  
**whistle** [wɪsl], v., vilistama; s.,  
vile, vilistamine.
- Whittington** ['wɪtɪŋtən], vaata 10,2.  
**whoever** [hu:'evə\*], kes iganes,  
kes veel (iaal).  
**wide** [waid], lai.  
**win** [wɪn], võitma.  
**wind** [waind], keerduma, keer-  
lema, väänduma; **~ing passage**,  
kõverik, kõver tee.  
**winding-sheet** ['waindɪŋʃi:t], sur-  
nuriie (-lina).  
**wit** [wit], meeleteravus, mõistus,  
meel.

**within** [wið'in], seespool, sees, jooksul.

**wolf** [wulf], hunt.

**woodland** ['wudlənd], metsmaa, mets.

**world-wide** ['wɜ:ldwaɪd], ~ fame, ilmakeuulsus.

**worth** [wɜ:θ], a., väärt; s., väärtus.

**worthless** ['wɜ:θlis], väärtusetu, kõlbmata.

**wound** [waʊnd], s, haav; v., haavama.

**wreck** [rek], wrak, laevarikk (-risu); **be ~ed**, hävitama, puruks minema (laev); merehädas olema.

**wrist** [rist], ranne, käeliige.



## CONTENTS.

	Text	Exercise
I. The Cricket's School . . . . .	9	143
II. How Mrs White Hen helped Rose . . . . .	13	145
III. Two Fables . . . . .	18	147
IV. The Butterfly that went Calling . . . . .	21	149
V. The Wisdom of a Poor Man . . . . .	25	151
VI. The Wolf and the Lamb . . . . .	28	152
VII. The Fox, The Bear and the Farmer (1) . . . . .	30	154
VIII. " " " " " " (2) . . . . .	34	155
IX. The Pedlar's Pack . . . . .	37	157
X. Dick Whittington and his Cat (1) . . . . .	43	160
XI. " " " " " " (2) . . . . .	50	162
XII. Rip Van Winkle (1) . . . . .	57	164
XIII. " " " (2) . . . . .	63	168
XIV. " " " (3) . . . . .	70	170
XV. The Brave Cabin Boy . . . . .	78	173
XVI. The Sea King of Devon (1) . . . . .	85	176
XVII. " " " " " (2) . . . . .	90	178
XVIII. " " " " " (3) . . . . .	97	180
XIX. " " " " " (4) . . . . .	102	183
XX. " " " " " (5) . . . . .	106	185
XXI. The Red Cord of Courage . . . . .	111	187
XXII. Grace Darling . . . . .	115	189

### EASY READING.

	Page
XXIII. Fables . . . . .	119
XXIV. The Parrot . . . . .	121
XXV. The Lion and the Hare . . . . .	123
XXVI. The Foolish Wolf . . . . .	125
XXVII. A Dog Story . . . . .	128

### POEMS.

XXVIII. To a Cricket . . . . .	131
XXIX. Mister Fly . . . . .	132
XXX. Answer to a Child's Question . . . . .	133
XXXI. Laughing Song . . . . .	134
XXXII. Mine Host of the "Golden Apple" . . . . .	134

XXXIII. The Useful Plough . . . . .	Page 135
XXXIV. Something Childish but very Natural . . . . .	136
XXXV. The Old Navy . . . . .	137
XXXVI. The Sea . . . . .	140

The Words in the First and Second English Books	
Arranged according to their Meaning . . . . .	193
Vocabulary (Second English Book) . . . . .	209

### Trükivigade õiendus.

Lhk.	rida	7	alt	Trükitud :	Peab olema :
"	13	"	1	suunset	sunset
"	15	"	1	ive	live
"	53	"	10	aud	and
"	59	"	11	cheerfulness	cheerfulness
"	62	"	9	lood	loud
"	64	"	6	appearence	appearance
"	70	"	5	traveiling	travelling
"	70	"	5	horels	hotels
"	80	"	11	heen	been
"	81	"	4	comander	commander
"	87	"	1	young.	young
"	90	"	<sup>13</sup> / <sub>14</sub>	through and	through it and
"	93	"	2	she	the
"	104	"	4	breath	breathe
"	135	"	7	in in the	in the
"	138	"	14	fo	to
"	155	"	2	langhing	laughing
"	155	"	7	centences	sentences
"	184	"	9	appeared	appeared
"	189	"	12	aud	and



56.

156-39/014 n

ESTICA

A-16340

29264698

TÜ RAAMATUKOGU



10300015857677